# Unit 23: Homophones

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **break** | **past** | **steel** | **waste** | **roll** |
| **passed** | **brake** | **waist** | **role** | **steal** |

Write the homophone that completes each sentence.

1. We (passed, past) the school on our way to the game.
2. In the (passed, past), it took weeks to cross the ocean.
3. One should never (waist, waste) food.
4. The cook tied an apron around her (waist, waste).
5. If you drop the glass, it will surely (brake, break).
6. Use the (brake, break) to stop your bicycle.
7. Heavy trucks cross the river on a (steal, steel) bridge.
8. Put your money where no one can (steal, steel) it.
9. What is your (role, roll) in the play?
10. I saw the big snowball (role, roll) down the hill.

Unit 23

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## Spelling Study Strategy

### Sorting by Endings

One good way to practice spelling is to place words into groups according to some spelling pattern. Here is a way to practice some of the words you studied in the past few weeks.

1. Make five columns on a large piece of paper or on the board.
2. Write one of the following words at the top of each column: **apple, soften, sailor, power,** and **simplest**.
3. Have a partner choose a spelling word from Units 19 through 22 and say it aloud.
4. Write the spelling word under the word with the same ending.

Standardized Test Practice

**Directions:** Read the introduction and the passage that follows. Then read each question and fill in the correct answer on your answer sheet.

*Shyla loves wildflowers and knows many of their names. She researched how they got some of those names and wrote a report for school. Read this draft of Shyla's report. As you read it, think about the improvements Shyla should make when she revises.*

What's in a Name?

(1) Simpel wildflowers brighten the day with a jumble of color. (2) Nature plants them without a single bit of troubel. (3) But humans gave them names and stories.

(4) A tale is told of a girl who would steal onto a sailing ship and wonder whethor her sweet William was there. (5) She was Black-eyed Susan. (6) Sweet William is a wildflower. (7) It blooms when Black-eyed Susan does. (8) Nature had no trouble getting them twogether.

(9) The story of Forget-me-not is sad. (10) After a battle, a knight and his lady past a riverbank where pretty blue flowers grew. (11) The knight was so eager to pick one that he could not help but stumble over a pebble and fall into the wator. (12) He tossed the lady the flower as the current took him away. (13) "Forget me not," he called.

(14) Here's a happyier story to tickle you and make you giggle. (15) There's a wildflower called "Dutchman's Breeches," or pants. (16) It has the cutest doubel blooms that together look like a pair of pants.

(17) Wildflowers have a place in history. (18) An example is the pink Mayflower that the pilgrims named for the ship that brought them to settle in the New World.

(19) Gather some wildflowers to put in a vase in the middel of a table. (20) Talk to them. (21) You do know their names.



GO ON

1 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 1?

**A** Change ***simpel*** to **simple**
**B** Change ***brighten*** to **briten**
**C** Change ***jumble*** to **jumbel**
**D** Make no change

2 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 2.

**A** Change ***single*** to **singel**
**B** Change ***troubel*** to **troubell**
**C** Change ***troubel*** to **trouble**
**D** Make no change

3 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 4?

**A** Change ***steal*** to **steel**
**B** Change ***wonder*** to **wondor**
**C** Change ***whethor*** to **whether**
**D** Make no change

4 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 8?

**A** Change ***trouble*** to **troubell**
**B** Change ***twogether*** to **together**
**C** Change ***twogether*** to **togethor**
**D** Make no change

5 What change should be made in sentence 10?

**A** Change ***battle*** to **battel**
**B** Change ***battle*** to **batel**
**C** Change ***past*** to **pased**
**D** Change ***past*** to **passed**

6 What change should be made in sentence 11?

**A** Change ***eager*** to **eagre**
**B** Change ***stumble*** to **stumbel**
**C** Change ***pebble*** to **pebel**
**D** Change ***wator*** to **water**

7 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 14?

**A** Change ***happyier*** to **happier**
**B** Change ***tickle*** to **tikel**
**C** Change ***giggle*** to **giggel**
**D** Make no change

8 What change, if any, should be made in sentence 16?

**A** Change ***cutest*** to **cuteest**
**B** Change ***doubel*** to **double**
**C** Change ***together*** to **twogether**
**D** Make no change

9 What change should be made in sentence 18?

**A** Change ***example*** to **exampel**
**B** Change ***pilgrims*** to **Pilgrims**
**C** Change ***settle*** to **settel**
**D** Change ***settle*** to **setell**

10 What change should be made in sentence 19?

**A** Change ***vase*** to **vace**
**B** Change ***gather*** to **gathor**
**C** Change ***middel*** to **middle**
**D** Change ***table*** to **tabel**

# Writer's Workshop

Enrichment

## Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics

### Pronouns

**Personal pronouns** include the words **I, me, you, we, us, he, him, she, her, they, them,** and **it**. These words can be used in place of names for people and things.

**Ida** is here. **She** came early.

**Possessive pronouns** include the words **my, your, his, her, its, their,** and **our**. These pronouns show ownership.

Call **Greg**. **His** tickets are here.

### Practice Activity

**A.** Write the boldfaced word in each sentence that is a pronoun.

1. The vase of **colorful** flowers made **their** table look pretty.
2. **The** players are tired, so **they** want to stop.
3. Bart and **he** are co-captains **of** the men's team.
4. The lifeguard **put** sunscreen on **her** nose.
5. The bird **is** carrying food to **its** babies.

**B.** Replace the underlined word or words with a pronoun from the box.

**them** **he** **we** **its** **their** **she** **our**

6. All the cattle are waiting for <u>the cattle's</u> water.
7. Eric is late, so <u>Eric</u> may lose this seat.
8. Did you bring the lunches that <u>you and I</u> packed?
9. Mom is still at work, but <u>Mom</u> will be home soon.
10. The playful kitten tumbled around with <u>the kitten's</u> ball of yarn.

**Practice Activity A**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**Practice Activity B**

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

# The Writing Process: Opinion

## Writing an Opinion Essay

### PREWRITING

Sometimes people copy information from books or the Internet without permission. You can convince others to respect and follow copyright rules by listing reasons in an opinion essay. Look for facts and details about copyright in reference books at the library. On the Internet, check out the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office website. As you think about your essay, make an outline of your reasons.

### DRAFTING

Use your outline to write an opinion essay. Begin with a topic sentence, followed by supporting sentences. Be sure to provide convincing reasons why your readers should agree with you. Use as many spelling words as possible.

### REVISING

When you have finished your first draft, read your essay from beginning to end. Check to see if you have included all of the reasons from your outline. Does each sentence support the topic? Now write your final draft.

### EDITING

Use the **Editing Checklist** to proofread your essay. Find three words that could be misspelled. If you typed your essay, run the spell-check feature in your word processing program to check your spelling. Otherwise, use a print or online dictionary to check your spelling. Be sure to use proofreading marks when you make corrections.

### PUBLISHING

Make a copy of your essay and share it with your readers.

### EDITING CHECKLIST

**Spelling**

- ✓ Circle words that contain the spelling patterns and rules learned in Units 19–23.
- ✓ Check the circled words in your **Spelling Dictionary**.
- ✓ Check for other spelling errors.

**Capital Letters**

- ✓ Capitalize important words in the title.
- ✓ Capitalize the first word in each sentence.
- ✓ Capitalize proper nouns.

**Punctuation**

- ✓ End each sentence with the correct punctuation.
- ✓ Use commas, apostrophes, and quotation marks correctly.

**Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics**

- ✓ Use personal and possessive pronouns correctly.

# Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. goose | *goose* | We cooked a **goose** for dinner. |
| 2. woman | *woman* | The **woman** held her son's hand. |
| 3. calf | *calf* | The **calf** stays near its mother. |
| 4. fish | *fish* | I saw **fish** swimming in the lake. |
| 5. mouse | *mouse* | The **mouse** lives in the hayfield. |
| 6. leaf | *leaf* | A **leaf** takes in light for a plant. |
| 7. children | *children* | The **children** are six years old. |
| 8. geese | *geese* | The **geese** fly together in flocks. |
| 9. calves | *calves* | Many **calves** are in the barn. |
| 10. leaves | *leaves* | The **leaves** fell from the elm tree. |
| 11. self | *self* | The restaurant had **self** service. |
| 12. child | *child* | The **child** is looking for her father. |
| 13. women | *women* | These **women** are studying law. |
| 14. mice | *mice* | If **mice** come inside, get a cat. |
| 15. selves | *selves* | The actress played two different **selves**. |
| 16. ox | *ox* | An **ox** is very strong. |
| 17. popcorn | *popcorn* | I eat **popcorn** at the movies. |
| 18. elf | *elf* | An **elf** is a fantasy character. |
| 19 oxen | *oxen* | The **oxen** pulled the heavy cart. |
| 20. elves | *elves* | The **elves** guarded the pot of gold. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–2.** Write two words that are both singular and plural.

**3–20.** Write each singular word and its plural partner. Think about how the spelling changes when you write the plural form.

**both singular and plural**

1. _____
2. _____

**pairs**

3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

**Remember**

Some nouns form the plural in irregular ways.

Spelling Tutor

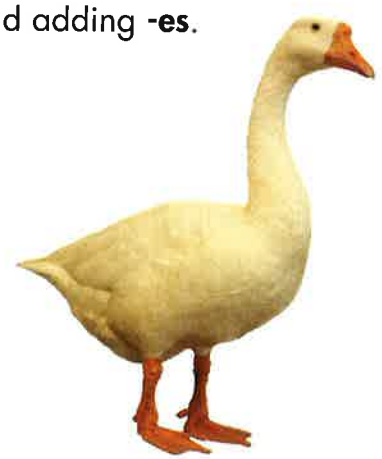
# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 25

## Word Building

Follow the directions to write spelling words. Circle the words whose plural is formed by changing **f** to **v** and adding **-es**.

1. leaves – ves + f = _____
2. women – en + an = _____
3. catch – tch + lf = _____
4. golf – go + se = _____
5. mountain – ntain + se = _____
6. oven – ven + x = _____



## Word Structure

**7–10.** Write the plural forms of **calf, leaf, self,** and **elf**.

11. Change one letter in **loose** to make this word.
12. Write the spelling word that is formed by two smaller words and has the same singular and plural form.
13. Change one letter in **fist** to make this word.
14. Change two letters in **goose** to make its plural form.
15. Write the singular form of **children**.
16. Remove two letters in **shelf** to make this word.

### Use the Dictionary

The dictionary lists plural forms of words that do not form the plural by adding an **-s** or **-es**. Write the plural form of the spelling word that you would find in the **Spelling Dictionary** for each of these words.

17. child
18. mouse
19. ox
20. woman

**Word Building**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

**Word Structure**

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

**Use the Dictionary**

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| goose | woman | calf | fish | mouse |
| leaf | children | geese | calves | leaves |
| self | child | women | mice | selves |
| ox | popcorn | elf | oxen | elves |

## Word Categorization

Write the spelling word or words that belong in each group.

1. infant, baby, _____
2. stem, twig, _____
3. hamster, gerbil, _____
4. fairies, pixies, _____
5. ladies, wives, _____

6–7. bulls, cows, _____, _____

## Complete the Idioms

Read the meaning of each idiom. Then write the spelling word that completes it.

8. (You're in big trouble.) Your _____ is cooked.
9. (When the one in charge is away, others act badly.) When the cat's away, the _____ will play.
10. (Make up your mind.) _____ or cut bait!

## Use Context Clues

Write the singular or plural form of the spelling word in parentheses that best completes each sentence.

11. Jimmy and Timmy are two separate _____. (self)
12. In the autumn, the _____ on the trees change color. (leaf)
13. Hal's mother is a very nice _____. (women)
14. Paul Bunyan had an animal called Babe, the Blue _____. (oxen)
15. We made _____ in the microwave before the movie started. (popcorn)
16. An _____ is a make-believe creature like a fairy. (elves)
17. The little _____ stay in the shallow end of the pool. (child)
18. The brown _____ is in the pasture with its mother. (calves)
19. The _____ fly south in the winter. (goose)
20. Rosa was angry, but now she's back to her sweet _____. (selves)

### Word Categorization

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

### Complete the Idioms

8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

### Use Context Clues

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 25

## Proofread a Story

Proofread the story beginning below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the story. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

¶ There were three chilldren who lived on a big farm in texas. The oldest chilld was named Louisa. She helped out on the farm. She fed the geece, took care of the new caf, and chased mise out of the barn⊙Louisa's youngest sister, Lucy, caught a mowse and kept it as a pet. She named her pet Micky. No one in the ~~F~~amily knew about Micky. Lucy made a bed of leeves for him and hid him in a box in her room. One day, Micky ran away. He ran into the kitchen and found some popcorne. he ate some. Then he ran into the barn and scared a gooce and the oxe. Micky made a lot of trouble, but Lucy said that he'd make it up to the family one day.

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ⌒ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Narrative Writing

### Write a Story Beginning

Begin a story of your own. Tell the reader the names of the characters, the setting of the story, and some of what happens. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- A good story beginning makes the reader want to know what will happen next. So the last part of your story beginning should leave the reader wanting more.
- Use correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Use a print or an online dictionary to check your spelling.

**Transfer**

Write three words from your story that are irregular plurals. Next to each plural, write its singular form.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| foot | mouse | calf | popcorn | lava |
| feet | children | leaf | elf | spinach |
| tooth | leaves | geese | oxen | tuna |
| teeth | self | calves | elves | wolves |
| sheep | child | mice | hoof | luggage |
| woman | women | selves | elk | hooves |
| fish | goose | ox | flounder | wolf |

Use words from the spelling list above to complete these exercises.

## Plurals

**1–12.** Write the singular and plural pairs whose plural is formed by changing **f** to **v** and adding **-es**.

**13–16.** Write the words that name animals and have the same singular and plural form.

**17–18.** Write the plural form of **ox** and **woman**.

## Related Words

Related words have the same word or word part in them. For example, **sheepherder** and **sheepdog** are related words.

**19.** Write the one spelling word that relates these words.

_____**ball,** _____**hills,** _____**step**

**20.** Write the one spelling word that relates these words.

_____**brush,** _____**paste,** _____**ache**

**Plurals**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____

**Related Words**

19. _____
20. _____

# Science

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for words that name more than one.

People have eaten popcorn for centuries. No one knows for sure when the first corn was popped, but scientists have found popcorn grains over 1,000 years old. The grains still popped!

Popcorn was at the first Thanksgiving. Pilgrim wives made loaves of home-baked bread and cooked the wild turkey and geese that the men shot. Native Americans brought popped corn to go with these and other yummy treats.

Popcorn has a long history. The question we ask ourselves is "What makes popcorn pop?" Like so much in our lives, the answer can be found in science.

The secret is water and popcorn's tough hull, or outer covering. Each kernel of popcorn has water stored inside it. When popcorn is heated above the boiling point of 212 degrees Fahrenheit, the water turns to steam. This creates pressure inside the kernel, causing it to pop.

Other grains, like wheat or rice, have water in them, but they don't pop. Instead, their hulls let the steam escape. Only popcorn's hull is tough enough to trap the steam.

Science can explain why popcorn pops, but you don't need science to enjoy a big bowl of freshly popped popcorn!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

Write the words from the selection that name more than one of each word below. Use a print or online dictionary to check your answers.

**1.** person
**2.** wife
**3.** goose
**4.** man
**5.** life
**6.** loaf

**7–10.** Write the words that can name both one and more than one.

# Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** unlucky | *unlucky* | What an **unlucky** choice of seats! |
| **2.** review | *review* | Let us **review** what we learned. |
| **3.** preschool | *preschool* | The young child is in **preschool**. |
| **4.** unfair | *unfair* | He took **unfair** advantage of us. |
| **5.** reheat | *reheat* | They will **reheat** the vegetables. |
| **6.** prepay | *prepay* | You must **prepay** your trip. |
| **7.** untie | *untie* | I cannot **untie** the knot. |
| **8.** recover | *recover* | We will **recover** the lost sock. |
| **9.** preview | *preview* | They saw a **preview** of the movie. |
| **10.** unhappy | *unhappy* | The lost child is **unhappy**. |
| **11.** rewrite | *rewrite* | Please **rewrite** the letter in ink. |
| **12.** pretest | *pretest* | A **pretest** prepares us for the test. |
| **13.** rebuild | *rebuild* | Will you **rebuild** the damaged shed? |
| **14.** uncover | *uncover* | We have to **uncover** the pan. |
| **15.** recheck | *recheck* | Let me **recheck** that answer. |
| **16.** unlock | *unlock* | Use this key to **unlock** the door. |
| **17.** preheat | *preheat* | We **preheat** the oven before baking. |
| **18.** unsafe | *unsafe* | Biking without a helmet is **unsafe**. |
| **19.** reread | *reread* | I must **reread** the instructions. |
| **20.** unpack | *unpack* | They will **unpack** after their trip. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–8.** Write the words with the prefix **un-**.

**9–15.** Write the words with the prefix **re-**.

**16–20.** Write the words with the prefix **pre-**.

**Remember**

Prefixes, like **un-, re-,** and **pre-,** are added to the beginnings of base words to make new words with different meanings: **pack, unpack; write, rewrite; pay, prepay**. The base word usually does not change.

Spelling Tutor

un-
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

re-
9.
10.
11.
12.
13.
14.
15.

pre-
16.
17.
18.
19.
20.

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 26

## Word Meanings

The prefix **un-** means "not." The prefix **re-** means "again." The prefix **pre-** means "before." Write the spelling word that fits each definition.

1. to cover again or get back again
2. to look at before
3. not lucky
4. to read again
5. to heat beforehand
6. not fair
7. to build again
8. to pay beforehand
9. to write again
10. to check again
11. a place for children to go before they go to school

## Use Synonyms

Write the spelling word that is a synonym for each word.

12. unlace
13. dangerous
14. reveal
15. sad
16. study
17. open

## Use the Dictionary

Write a spelling word that would appear on a dictionary page with the following guide words.

18. player • print
19. record • ridge
20. Tues. • useless

Word Meanings

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

Use Synonyms

12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

Use the Dictionary

18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Unit 26

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| unlucky | review | preschool | unfair | reheat |
| prepay | untie | recover | preview | unhappy |
| rewrite | pretest | rebuild | uncover | recheck |
| unlock | preheat | unsafe | reread | unpack |

## Complete the Sequences

A word in each series is missing a prefix. Add the prefix and write the spelling word to complete the sequence.

1. to wrap, to bake, to _____ cover, to eat
2. to pack, to travel, to _____ pack
3. to lock, to leave, to return, to _____ lock
4. to cook, to cool, to _____ heat, to eat
5. to build, to fall apart, to _____ build
6. to put on, to tie, to _____ tie, to take off
7. to write, to proofread, to _____ write
8. to catch a cold, to be ill, to _____ cover

## Replace the Words

Replace the underlined words with a spelling word that means the same.

9. I will read those directions again.
10. Please look over and study your notes again.
11. I will pay ahead for the book I ordered.
12. I have been having bad luck lately.
13. I am going to check my answers again.

## Use Context Clues

Add the correct prefix to each word in parentheses to complete each sentence.

14. The cook will _____ the oven before he bakes the potatoes. (heat)
15. Let's _____ our home movies before we show them to friends. (view)
16. My four-year-old brother goes to _____. (school)
17. What was your score on the spelling _____? (test)
18. I will be _____ when my best friend moves. (happy)
19. Using a tool before you are taught how to use it is _____. (safe)
20. It is _____ to borrow a book and not return it. (fair)

Complete the Sequences

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

Replace the Words

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____

Use Context Clues

14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 26

## Proofread a List

Proofread the list below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the list. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

**Things to Do This Week**

1. Study for math preatest.
2. Make list of unnsafe activities for social studies.
3. Rereed book, revue plot, and prepare book report.
   Rerite book report more neatly.
4. Finish writing story "Unluckey Me" by wednesday.
5. Help Dad rebild doghouse this weekend.
6. Unpak everything from bookbag. Re-check my school supplies.
7. Ask Mom for money to ~~to~~ preapay this week's lunches.

**Proofreading Marks**

- Make Uppercase
- Make Lowercase
- Add
- Delete
- Add a Period
- Indent

## Narrative Writing

### Write a List

Write a list of things to do. Include important things you need to remember to complete a task, the order in which things need to be done, and when they need to be completed. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Make sure your list includes the time frame for when you have to finish your task. When you review the list, you should be able to tell a story of what you did.
- Use correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your list. Circle three words that may be misspelled. Use a dictionary to check the spelling.

**Transfer**

Write three words from your list that have prefixes. Circle the prefix in each word.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| preslice | prepay | reread | recheck | refresh |
| preplan | untie | unlucky | preheat | unknown |
| regroup | recover | review | unsafe | uncertain |
| rename | unhappy | reheat | unpack | unfriendly |
| unkind | rewrite | preview | prehistoric | reorder |
| preschool | uncover | pretest | prerecorded | refill |
| unfair | unlock | rebuild | reform | presoak |

Prefixes and Suffixes A

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Prefixes and Suffixes B

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Silent Letters

17. _____
18. _____

Anagrams

19. _____
20. _____

## Prefixes and Suffixes

**A.** Many base words can use more than one prefix. Add or change the prefix in each word below to write spelling words.

**1–2.** heat
**3–4.** cover
**5.** uncheck
**6.** retie
**7.** relock
**8.** review
**9.** repay
**10.** unread
**11.** repack
**12.** retest

**B.** The noun suffix **-ness,** which means "state or condition of," changes adjectives to nouns. Write the spelling words that are related to each noun below.

**13.** unhappiness
**14.** unfairness
**15.** unkindness
**16.** unfriendliness

## Silent Letters

**17–18.** Write the spelling words that contain silent **w** or silent **h**.

## Anagrams

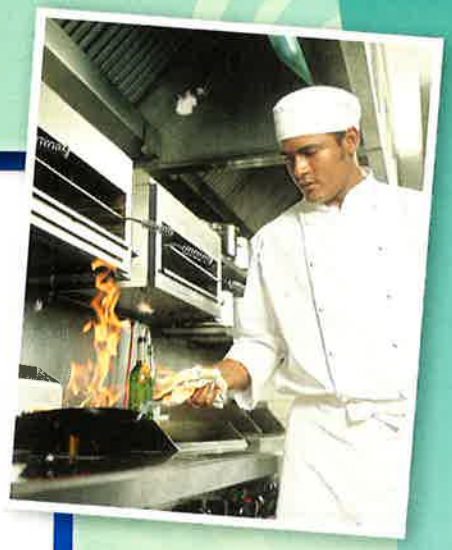
**19–20.** Write the spelling words that are anagrams for these words.

**former** **filler**

# Art

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for words that have prefixes.



A good cook is an artist unlike any other. That's because the quicker the art disappears, the better the artist is! It is hard work to be an artist in the kitchen. Sometimes a recipe must be redone again and again until it is worthy of a good review. Who reviews it? You do!

If you watch the artist at work, you get to preview the art as well as review it. Of course, you must take some precautions. For example, it is unwise to get too close to a hot stove or to uncover a boiling pot. Also, you'd better not mess around with any of the ingredients. You wouldn't fool around with Picasso's paints, would you?

Perhaps you're unable to create art in the kitchen. You can still be the artist's assistant. You can prearrange the table where the masterpiece will be unveiled. After all, great art must be properly shown. By the way, *prearrange* is a fancy way to say, "Set the table, please."

Then, when the meal is over, you can clear the table and do the dishes!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

Use a print or online dictionary to check your answers.

**1–5.** Write the words with the prefix **un-**.

**6–7.** Write the words with the prefix **re-**.

**8–10.** Write the words with the prefix **pre-**. Do not write the same word twice.

# Unit 27 Base Words With Suffix: -er

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** farmer | *farmer* | The **farmer** milked his cows. |
| **2.** skater | *skater* | She was judged the best **skater**. |
| **3.** painter | *painter* | The **painter** stirred his paint. |
| **4.** camper | *camper* | We met a **camper** in the forest. |
| **5.** listener | *listener* | Drake is a good **listener**. |
| **6.** banker | *banker* | We got a loan from the **banker**. |
| **7.** owner | *owner* | Who is the **owner** of this farm? |
| **8.** learner | *learner* | A good **learner** pays attention. |
| **9.** hiker | *hiker* | Each **hiker** wore a backpack. |
| **10.** catcher | *catcher* | The **catcher** signaled to the pitcher. |
| **11.** speaker | *speaker* | That **speaker** was very entertaining. |
| **12.** climber | *climber* | A rock **climber** needs good equipment. |
| **13.** player | *player* | The team captain is a good **player**. |
| **14.** reader | *reader* | This book will please any **reader**. |
| **15.** baker | *baker* | Thanks to the **baker** for this bread. |
| **16.** dreamer | *dreamer* | He is a **dreamer** who has great ideas! |
| **17.** reporter | *reporter* | The **reporter** covered the fire. |
| **18.** builder | *builder* | The house was planned by the **builder**. |
| **19.** singer | *singer* | Each **singer** used the microphone. |
| **20.** leader | *leader* | He is the **leader** of the band. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–17.** Write the words in which **-er** is added without changing the base word.

**18–20.** Write the words in which final **e** is dropped before adding **-er**.

**Remember**

The suffix **-er** is often added to a verb to make a noun meaning "one who." If the base word ends in silent **e,** drop the **e** and add the ending.

**Spelling Tutor**

no changes to base words

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

drop final -e

18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 27

## Word Meanings

The suffix **-er** can change a verb to a noun that means "someone who does something." Add the suffix **-er** to each underlined verb to write a noun that is a spelling word.

1. I often hike in the woods or hills near the park. I am a _____.
2. Missy will play goalie on a hockey team. She will be a _____.
3. I listen carefully. I am a good _____.
4. Walter likes to speak to large groups of people. He is a _____.
5. My cousin wants to report on sports for a newspaper. He wants to be a _____.
6. Mr. Brown can farm both his land and his father's. He is a successful _____.

## Word Completion

Write a spelling word by adding the suffix **-er** to each of the following base words.

7. dream
8. lead
9. own
10. paint
11. climb
12. read

## Use the Dictionary

Write the spelling word for each of the following dictionary respellings.

13. /**kăm′** pər/
14. /**băng′** kər/
15. /**sĭng′** ər/
16. /**kăch′** ər/
17. /**bā** kər/
18. /**skā′** tər/
19. /**bĭl′** dər/
20. /**lûr′** nər/

**Dictionary Check** Be sure to check your answers in your **Spelling Dictionary.**

Word Meanings

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

Word Completion

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Use the Dictionary

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| farmer | skater | painter | camper | listener |
| banker | owner | learner | hiker | catcher |
| speaker | climber | player | reader | baker |
| dreamer | reporter | builder | singer | leader |

## Make Inferences

Write the spelling word that solves each riddle.

1. I go for long walks in the mountains. Who am I?
2. I spend many nights in a tent. Who am I?
3. I study hard and learn my lessons. Who am I?
4. I am a box that sound comes from. What am I?
5. I take care of my animals and plow my fields. Who am I?
6. I spend all my spare time looking at words in books. Who am I?
7. I am looking for my lost dog. Who am I?
8. I see pictures in my sleep. Who am I?
9. I handle a lot of money every day. Who am I?
10. I make fresh bread and rolls each day. Who am I?

## Use Context Clues

Add **-er** to the word in parentheses to complete each sentence.

11. A monkey is a natural tree _____. (climb)
12. The _____ captured the colors of the sunset. (paint)
13. She is a _____ on a baseball team. (play)
14. Abraham Lincoln was a great _____. (lead)
15. That _____ is helping to put up the new shopping mall. (build)
16. We went to the ice arena to watch the figure _____ perform. (skate)
17. A good _____ is as important as a good speaker. (listen)
18. The local television station sent its best news _____ to cover the mayor's speech. (report)
19. She is a _____ with a beautiful soprano voice. (sing)
20. A pitcher and a _____ work together to strike out a batter. (catch)

Make Inferences

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Use Context Clues

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 27

## Proofread a Description

Proofread the description below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the description. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

A Lesson on Ice

¶ No paintir could have produced such a colorful ~~P~~icture. No reportur could have written about a more exciting show for the readr. First there was a singur who made every ~~every~~ listiner smile. Then each skatr, wearing a splendid costume, glided onto the ice. The speeker roared the name of each star as he or she whipped around the arena, following the leeder of the group. ≡the beautiful scene was the work of a dremer, and everyone in the audience became a leerner⊙

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ~~ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Informative/Explanatory Writing

### Write a Description

Write or type a paragraph describing something you have seen. Describe where you were, what you saw, and how you felt. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Use descriptive language to help the reader "see" what you saw and "feel" as you felt.
- Use correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- If you typed your description, run the spell-check feature in your word processing program to check your spelling. Otherwise, use a print or online dictionary to check your spelling.

**Transfer**

Write three words from the paragraph you wrote that have the suffix **-er**. Write the words in your Spelling Journal. Circle the suffix and write the base word.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| driver | listener | leader | climber | pitcher |
| teacher | owner | skater | baker | publisher |
| jumper | speaker | camper | dreamer | dancer |
| racer | player | banker | singer | jogger |
| worker | reader | learner | commander | jeweler |
| farmer | reporter | hiker | gardener | forester |
| painter | builder | catcher | homemaker | letter carrier |

**Pattern Power**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

**Meaning Mastery**

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

**Word History**

12. _____

## Pattern Power

1. Write the word with a silent consonant before the prefix **-er**.
2. Write the word with a one-syllable base word whose final consonant is doubled before the suffix **-er** is added.
3. Write the word that contains a compound word with the suffix **-er**.

Write the spelling words that are anagrams for these words.

**4.** reteach **5.** rebuild **6.** replay

## Meaning Mastery

Write the spelling word that fits each meaning. Circle the word that dropped the final **e** before adding the ending.

**7.** a soprano
**8.** a person who vacations in a national forest
**9.** a person who grows crops
**10.** a person who walks on trails
**11.** a baseball player who stays behind home plate

## Word History

**12.** The Latin root word **port** means "to carry." The Latin prefix **re-** means "back or again." Which spelling word means "one who carries back"?

# Math

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for words that have the suffix **-er**.

Mathematics and banking are like a buyer and a seller. You can't have one without the other.

Suppose a business owner takes out a loan. The banker uses percentages to calculate the rate of interest the borrower has to pay. That calls for complicated math.

The money in savings accounts earns interest. Interest is calculated on the amount of money in the account. The longer your money stays in the account, the greater the amount of interest it earns. What could be nicer than getting more money than what you started out with?

Banks issue checking accounts. It's safer to pay bills by check than with cash. A check paid by the bank is called a canceled check. Canceled checks prove that a bill has been paid. You have to keep track of the money that goes in and out of your checking account. That's called balancing your account. The bank also has to be sure not to pay out more money than is in the account.

Bank employees are careful to check that the money you put in the bank comes and goes in the right direction. Maybe that's why a bank is quieter than most places. Everyone is concentrating on math!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

Use a print or online dictionary to check your answers.

**1–8.** Write the base words whose spelling does not change when the suffix **-er** is added.

**9–10.** Write the base words in which the final **e** is dropped before the suffix **-er** is added.

# Unit 28 Base Words With Suffixes: -ful, -less

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. joyful | joyful | She sang a **joyful,** happy song. |
| 2. helpless | helpless | We untangled the **helpless** butterfly. |
| 3. restful | restful | The quietness was **restful**. |
| 4. careless | careless | She tried not to be **careless**. |
| 5. useful | useful | A pen is a **useful** writing tool. |
| 6. thankless | thankless | Cleaning is a **thankless** activity. |
| 7. peaceful | peaceful | May your day be happy and **peaceful**. |
| 8. hopeless | hopeless | Finding the lost coin was **hopeless**. |
| 9. thankful | thankful | He is **thankful** for family and friends. |
| 10. cloudless | cloudless | The sky was **cloudless** and bright. |
| 11. powerful | powerful | Kindness is a **powerful** force. |
| 12. helpful | helpful | We try to be **helpful** at home. |
| 13. powerless | powerless | They felt **powerless** against the wind. |
| 14. careful | careful | Be **careful** not to slip on the tile. |
| 15. restless | restless | He was **restless** with nothing to do. |
| 16. wasteful | wasteful | Not recycling bottles is **wasteful**. |
| 17. cheerful | cheerful | We are **cheerful** most of the time. |
| 18. useless | useless | The toy is **useless** without a battery. |
| 19. playful | playful | Kittens are young, **playful** cats. |
| 20. thoughtful | thoughtful | The decision was a **thoughtful** one. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–12.** Write the words with the suffix **-ful**.

**13–20.** Write the words with the suffix **-less**.

**Remember**

Add a suffix to the end of a base word to make a new word with a new meaning. The suffix **-ful** means "full of." The suffix **-less** means "without."

Spelling Tutor

-ful

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

-less

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 28

## Replace Words

Write a spelling word to replace the underlined word or words in each sentence.

1. Grandpa's 90th birthday party was a happy celebration.
2. It is important to look both ways and be cautious when crossing the street.
3. A very strong earthquake shook the building.
4. Rodrigo was grateful that his sister was able to attend his graduation.
5. The people of the village were without the ability to stop the river from flooding.
6. It is handy to have a map when you are lost.
7. It was considerate of Ava to send me flowers on my birthday.
8. The volunteers were willing to offer aid to the victims of the hurricane.

## Use Antonyms

Write the spelling word that is an antonym for each word below.

9. hopeful
10. calm
11. cheerless
12. cloudy
13. thankful
14. thrifty
15. warlike
16. useful
17. careful

Write the following words. Beside each word, write the number of synonyms for it that are listed in your **Writing Thesaurus**.

18. restful
19. helpless
20. playful

**Thesaurus Check** Be sure to check for synonyms in your **Writing Thesaurus**.

Replace Words

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

Use Antonyms

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

Use the Thesaurus

18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| joyful | helpless | restful | careless | useful |
| thankless | peaceful | hopeless | thankful | cloudless |
| powerful | helpful | powerless | careful | restless |
| wasteful | cheerful | useless | playful | thoughtful |

## Complete the Analogies

Write the spelling word that completes each analogy.

1. **Wealth** is to **riches** as **cautious** is to _____.
2. **Question** is to **answer** as **careful** is to _____.
3. **Vanish** is to **appear** as **valuable** is to _____.
4. **Dinner** is to **supper** as **grateful** is to _____.
5. **Laugh** is to **cry** as **useless** is to _____.
6. **Tiny** is to **small** as **ungrateful** is to _____.
7. **Hard** is to **soft** as **patient** is to _____.
8. **Work** is to **labor** as **happy** is to _____.
9. **Show** is to **display** as **helpless** is to _____.

## Use Context Clues

Write the spelling word that best completes each sentence.

10. A thrifty person is not _____.
11. That nation will not wage war; it is a _____ country.
12. Sending a get-well card was very _____ of you.
13. The sky was clear and _____.
14. The lost climbers felt _____ until they saw the search plane.

## Complete the Comparisons

Choose a spelling word that best completes each comparison.

15. A kitten with a ball is as _____ as a baby with a rattle.
16. The lost puppy was as _____ as a newborn baby.
17. Your map was more _____ than mine.
18. The dinner was as _____ as a holiday celebration.
19. The engine in that machine is as _____ as the engine in a locomotive.
20. A ten-minute nap is not as _____ as a night's sleep.

**helpless**
**restful**
**helpful**
**powerful**
**joyful**
**playful**

Complete the Analogies

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

Use Context Clues

10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____

Complete the Comparisons

15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 28

## Proofread a Business Letter

Proofread the business letter below for ten misspelled words. Rewrite the letter, correcting any errors in spelling, punctuation, or capitalization.

34 Marwick Drive
Plano, TX 75085
July 15, 2012

Mayor Rebecca Townsend
P.O. Box 860678
Plano, TX 75086

Dear Mayor Townsend:

¶ Please consider a law to get Citizens to be more thoughtfull and less carless about their dogs. Dogs are helpfil, usful, and playfull. They are also powerliss to t& care for themselves. Too many people are not carful with them. They do not pick up after their dogs. This is wastefil because it makes more work for our street cleaners, who have a thankles job as it is. i am sure many citizens would be thankfil if you would pass such a law.

¶ Thank you for your consideration.

Very Truly yours,
Marco Samson

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ⌒ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Informative/Explanatory Writing

### Write a Business Letter

Use the writing process to write a letter to your mayor or city council about a concern you have. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use appropriate language to briefly describe your concern and offer a solution.
- Include the parts of a business letter: heading, inside address, greeting, body, closing, and signature.
- Use a print or online dictionary to check your spelling.

### Transfer

Write two words from your letter that have the suffix **-ful** and two words that have the suffix **-less**. Write the words in your Spelling Journal. Circle the suffix and write the base word.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| airless | useful | thoughtful | powerless | senseless |
| lawful | peaceful | joyful | restless | weightless |
| landless | powerful | restful | wasteful | boastful |
| loveless | helpful | thankless | playful | skillful |
| hurtful | careful | hopeless | awful | colorful |
| helpless | cheerful | thankful | beautiful | sleepless |
| careless | useless | cloudless | homeless | cordless |

Use words from the spelling list above to complete these exercises.

## Pattern Power

**1–4.** Write the spelling words whose base words have silent letters in the middle.

**5.** Write the spelling word that contains the word **loud**.

## Meaning Mastery

**6–17.** Write the six pairs of spelling words that are antonyms. Use a print or online dictionary to check your answers.

## Word Building

First replace the underlined letter or letters. Then add a suffix to write a spelling word.

**18.** d<u>o</u>pe

**19.** <u>boy</u>

**20.** ch<u>air</u>

### Pattern Power

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

### Meaning Mastery

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

### Word Building

18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Social Studies

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for words with the suffixes **-ful** or **-less**.

The battle of Iwo Jima was one of the most dreadful battles of World War II. It is doubtful that we would have been successful without Native American "code talkers."

We used codes to communicate battle plans, and our enemy was masterful at breaking these codes. This caused the deaths of countless American soldiers. However, Navajo soldiers gave us a code that was never broken.

The Navajo code was paperless; it was spoken. Each Navajo word was put into English. Suppose the first word of the message started with the letter *n*. Then the first word of the code would be *tsah*. That's the Navajo word for *needle*.

The code talkers were flawless. They could put a message into English in less than 20 seconds.

The enemy was clueless. All efforts to break the code were useless.

The code was kept secret after the war, so it was a long time before people knew about the code talkers. In 1992, the Pentagon dedicated a special exhibit to them. In 2000, Congress awarded the Congressional Gold Medal to the 29 original code talkers.

The Navajo have a special name for America. It is *Nehemah*. The word means "mother." The code talkers served their mother bravely. They will always be remembered by a thankful nation.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

**1–5.** Write the base words whose suffix is **-ful**. Circle the base word that contains a silent consonant.

**6–10.** Write the base words whose suffix is **-less**.

# Unit 29 Calendar Words

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | January | *January* | The new year begins on **January** 1. |
| 2. | February | *February* | Valentine's Day is **February** 14. |
| 3. | March | *March* | **March** is named for the god Mars. |
| 4. | April | *April* | **April** is a month with thirty days. |
| 5. | May | *May* | Mother's Day is celebrated in **May**. |
| 6. | June | *June* | School vacation begins in **June**. |
| 7. | July | *July* | **July** Fourth is Independence Day. |
| 8. | August | *August* | Many people vacation in **August**. |
| 9. | September | *September* | Thirty days has **September**. |
| 10. | October | *October* | Colorful leaves appear in **October**. |
| 11. | November | *November* | Elections are held in **November**. |
| 12. | December | *December* | **December** ends the year. |
| 13. | calendar | *calendar* | Mark today's date on the **calendar**. |
| 14. | Sunday | *Sunday* | **Sunday** begins a new week. |
| 15. | Monday | *Monday* | On **Monday** we go back to school. |
| 16. | Tuesday | *Tuesday* | **Tuesday** comes early in the week. |
| 17. | Wednesday | *Wednesday* | **Wednesday** falls in midweek. |
| 18. | Thursday | *Thursday* | Thanksgiving falls on **Thursday**. |
| 19. | Friday | *Friday* | **Friday** ends the work week. |
| 20. | Saturday | *Saturday* | School is not held on **Saturday**. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–3.** Write the words with one syllable.

**4–12.** Write the words with two syllables.

**13–20.** Write the words with three or more syllables.

**Remember**

It is important to learn to spell the names of the months of the year and the days of the week. These words always begin with a capital letter.

**Spelling Tutor**

one syllable

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

two syllables

4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

three or more syllables

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 29

## Word Meanings

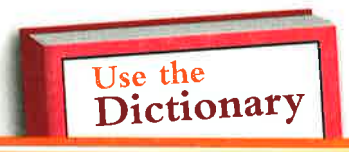
Write the name of the month that completes each sentence.

1. In _____ we have a parade to celebrate Independence Day.
2. We buy bright orange pumpkins at the end of _____.
3. Mom will try to fool me on the first day of _____.
4. I will send you a valentine in _____.
5. In _____ we will have a Memorial Day picnic.
6. When spring begins in _____, I will fly my kite.
7. In the Northern Hemisphere, summer begins late in the month of _____.
8. The month before the last month of the year is _____.
9. Labor Day always falls on the first Monday of _____.

## Word Structure

Unscramble the letters to write spelling words. Begin the name of each month with a capital letter.

10. auyjnar
11. utgsua
12. eembrcde
13. alncedra




Look up the names of the days of the week in your **Spelling Dictionary**. Then write the name that goes with each word history.

14. Tiu's day
15. day of the sun
16. Saturn's day
17. Thor's day
18. Woden's day
19. Freya's day
20. day of the moon

Word Meanings

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

Word Structure

10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____

Use the Dictionary

14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| January | February | March | April | May |
| June | July | August | September | October |
| November | December | calendar | Sunday | Monday |
| Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday | Saturday |

## Complete the Poem

Write the names of the months to complete this poem.

In 1. the new year starts.
2. brings Valentine hearts.
In 3. the winds will come and go.
In 4. we usually don't see snow.
In 5. the green grass grows, and soon
School will end in the month of 6..
And maybe we'll watch a parade go by
On our own most special Fourth of 7..
8. is usually hot, not cool.
9. sees us back in school.
In 10. the leaves turn gold,
And in 11. the weather turns cold.
So now let's give a little cheer
For 12., which ends the year.

## Use Context Clues

Write the spelling word that best completes each sentence.

13. After all the yard work I did last weekend, I was glad to go back to school on _____.
14. With three days on either side of it, _____ is the middle of the week.
15. Thanksgiving falls on the fourth _____ of November.
16. _____ is the last weekday but the first day of the weekend.
17. The last day of school each week is _____.
18. The first day of the week on many calendars is _____.
19. _____ is the day that follows Monday.
20. Jim writes the date of every away game in his _____.

Complete the Poem

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Use Context Clues

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 29

## Proofread a How-To Paragraph

Proofread the how-to paragraph below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the paragraph. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

**Gardening Hints**

¶ Mark your calender for Janurary 1⊙ This is a good month to buy seed. in Febuary, check that you have all your supplies. Start your ~~your~~ seeds indoors. Take a Saterday to plan your garden. Hardy crops may be planted in Aprel or Mae. Know which plants like the heat of Juli and Augist. you may be able to harvest ⁄crops as late as Septembir or Oktober. Happy gardening!

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ⌒ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Informative/Explanatory Writing

### Write a How-To Paragraph

Write a paragraph telling how to make or do something. Tell what is being made or done. Explain the advantages of following your advice. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Write the steps involved, the order in which they should be done, and the time each will take.
- Be sure that your how-to steps are in the proper sequence.
- Use correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your writing. Circle three words that may be misspelled. Use a print dictionary to check the spelling.

**Transfer**

Write in your Spelling Journal three spelling words that you used in your paragraph. Circle the first letter of each word. Write whether it is an uppercase or lowercase letter and tell why.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| month | April | Saturday | December | up-to-date |
| monthly | June | January | calendar | Fourth of July |
| spring | July | May | Tuesday | Memorial Day |
| summer | Sunday | August | Thursday | Labor Day |
| week | Monday | September | bimonthly | Martin Luther King Day |
| February | Wednesday | October | biweekly | Presidents' Day |
| March | Friday | November | daily | Thanksgiving |

## Meaning Mastery A

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

## Meaning Mastery B

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____

## Meaning Mastery

Use these clues to write the English months and days.

**A.** Roman months are named for gods, rulers, and numbers.

1. *aperire*—"to open"
2. *Februus*—Roman god
3. *Maia*—goddess of spring
4. *Juno*—goddess of marriage
5. *Julius Caesar*—Roman emperor
6. *Janus*—god who looked forward and back
7. *Augustus*—first Roman emperor
8. *septem*—seven
9. *octo*—eight
10. *Mars*—god of war
11. *novem*—nine
12. *decem*—ten

**B.** *Tag* is German for **day**. *Woch* means "week." *Mon* means "moon." *Sonn* means "sun." *Mitt* means "mid." Use these clues to write each German word below in English. Circle the day of the week that has a silent consonant.

13. *Montag*
14. *Sonntag*
15. *Donnerstag*—after *Mittwoch*
16. *Samstag*—before *Sonntag*
17. *Freitag*—between *Donnerstag* and *Samstag*
18. *Mittwoch*
19. *Dienstag*—after *Montag*

# Technology

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below. Look for words that name the days of the week or months of the year.

A calendar is a tool. It helps you remember what you need to do and when you need to do it. You can't just hang it on the refrigerator and ignore it. You need to check it.

An online calendar won't let you ignore it. Let's say that your Mom's birthday is April 1 and you don't want to shop for a gift at the last minute. Put a reminder for March 1 on your online calendar. A pop-up window will appear on your computer on March 1. It will remind you to check your calendar.

Suppose you have a book report due on Wednesday. On Thursday, you have a spelling test, and you have a math test on Friday. A friend asks you to sleep over on Tuesday. Check your calendar! You'd better schedule that sleepover for another day, maybe Sunday. No, Sunday is October 29, pumpkin-picking day with your family.

You can keep all that information on a paper calendar, but a paper calendar doesn't give pop-up reminders. You don't have to buy a new calendar every January, and it won't fall off the refrigerator and disappear!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

## WORD SORT

Write the name of the month or day of the week to match each clue. Check your answers in a print or online dictionary.

1. has a silent consonant
2. can be respelled /**thûrz'** dā/
3. is a homograph; can mean "to walk in step with others"
4. has a **long i** sound
5. has a first syllable that rhymes with **man**
6. the /**k**/ sound is spelled **c**
7. looks like a compound word

# Unit 30 Assess for Transfer

**Unit 25**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

**Unit 26**

5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

**Unit 27**

10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____

**Unit 28**

14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____

## Units 25–29

### Assessment

Each assessment word in the box fits one of the spelling patterns you have studied over the past five weeks. Read the spelling patterns. Then write each assessment word below the unit number it fits.

### Unit 25

**1–4.** Some nouns form the plural in irregular ways.

### Unit 26

**5–9.** Prefixes, like **un-, re-,** and **pre-,** are added to the beginning of base words to make new words with different meanings: **pack, unpack; write, rewrite; pay, prepay.** The base word usually does not change.

### Unit 27

**10–13.** The suffix **-er** is often added to a verb to make a noun meaning "one who." If the base word ends in silent **e,** drop the **e** and add the ending.

### Unit 28

**14–18.** Add a suffix to the end of a base word to make a new word with a new meaning. The suffix **-ful** means "full of." The suffix **-less** means "without."

### Unit 29

It is important to learn to spell the names of the months of the year and the days of the week. These words always begin with a capital letter.

**Words for Assessment**

- preset
- pajamas
- biker
- painless
- crossroads
- endless
- kicker
- unload
- retell
- keeper
- harmful
- gentleman
- unemployed
- gentlemen
- adventurer
- glassful
- preflight
- blissful

# Review

## Unit 25: Plurals

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mice** | **mouse** | **children** | **self** | **selves** |
| **fish** | **leaf** | **leaves** | **child** | **popcorn** |

Write the spelling word that best completes each sentence.

1. Our cat caught a _____ yesterday.
2. Betsy is finally acting like her old _____ again.
3. Each fourth grader will help one young _____.
4. All the _____ in the play were kindergarteners.
5. Do you like to rake _____ in the fall?
6. I caught only one _____ at the lake.
7. We enjoyed eating hot _____ while watching our favorite movie.
8. "When the cat's away the _____ will play" is a popular idiom.
9. To "turn over a new ____" means to make a new start.
10. As we grow older, we learn more about our true _____.

## Unit 26: Base Words With Prefixes: un-, re-, pre-

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **preschool** | **reread** | **rewrite** | **untie** | **prepay** |
| **unlock** | **recover** | **unfair** | **unhappy** | **uncover** |

Write the spelling word that fits the meaning.

11. before school
12. pay in advance
13. read again
14. get well
15. write again
16. not fair
17. not happy
18. take the cover off
19. open the lock
20. undo the knot or bow

**Unit 25**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

**Unit 26**

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

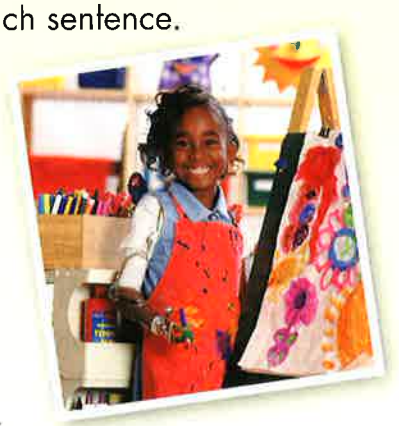
Unit 30

# Review

## Unit 27: Base Words With Suffix: -er

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **builder** | **listener** | **reporter** | **speaker** | **reader** |
| **painter** | **player** | **owner** | **leader** | **farmer** |

Write the spelling word that best completes each sentence.



1. If you farm, you are a _____.
2. If you build things, you are a _____.
3. If you have a role in a game, you are a _____.
4. If you own a bike, you are its _____.
5. If you can read, you are a _____.
6. If you direct a band, you are its _____.
7. If you listen to a speaker, you are a _____.
8. If you report stories for a newspaper, you are a _____.
9. If you paint pictures or houses, you are a _____.
10. If you give a speech, you are a _____.

## Unit 28: Base Words With Suffixes: -ful, -less

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **careless** | **thoughtful** | **useless** | **useful** | **helpful** |
| **cheerful** | **peaceful** | **careful** | **helpless** | **powerful** |

Write the spelling word that is the opposite of each of these words.

11. careful
12. powerless
13. useful
14. useless
15. helpful
16. helpless
17. cheerless
18. thoughtless
19. careless
20. warlike

Unit 27

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Unit 28

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Unit 29: Calendar Words

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| April | February | Saturday | Wednesday | Sunday |
| Friday | July | Monday | March | June |

Write the spelling word for each clue.

1. This word ends with a **long e** sound.
2. This one-syllable word has an **r**-controlled vowel.
3. This word begins with a **long a** sound.
4. This word has a **vowel-consonant-e** spelling pattern.
5. This word ends with a **long i** sound.

**6–10.** List the five spelling words that name days according to their order in the week.

Unit 29

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## Spelling Study Strategy

### Word Swap

Practicing spelling words can be fun if you make it into a game. Here's an idea you can try with a friend.

1. Swap spelling lists with a partner. Ask your partner to read your list and tell you if there are any words she or he doesn't know how to say. Say those words for your partner.
2. Ask your partner to read the first word on your list. Write the word on a piece of scrap paper.
3. Ask your partner to check your spelling. If you spelled the word correctly, your partner should say the next word on your list. If you did not spell the word correctly, ask your partner to spell the word out loud for you. Write the correct spelling.
4. Keep going until you have practiced five words. Then trade roles. Keep taking turns until you and your partner have practiced all the words on your lists.

# Standardized Test Practice

**Directions:** Read each item carefully. Select the best answer and fill in the circle on your answer sheet.

**1.** Read the following sentence.

> The camper will unpack his cookware so he can reheat dinner for the group leeder.

Which word in the sentence is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** camper
**B.** unpack
**C.** reheat
**D.** leeder

**2.** Read the following sentence.

> The farmer will not untye the calf if it is unsafe for it to go into the pasture.

Which word in the sentence is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** farmer
**B.** untye
**C.** calf
**D.** unsafe

**3.** Which of the following words adds the suffix INCORRECTLY?

**A.** careless
**B.** cheerful
**C.** thoughtful
**D.** usless

**4.** Read the following sentence.

> The cheerful preschool classroom was filled with joyful childrens.

What change should be made to this sentence?

**A.** change **cheerful** to **cheerfull**
**B.** change **preschool** to **preskool**
**C.** change **joyful** to **joiful**
**D.** change **childrens** to **children**

**5.** Which of the following words adds the prefix INCORRECTLY?

**A.** recover
**B.** prepay
**C.** re-porter
**D.** rewrite

**6.** Read the following sentence.

> The skater had a powerfull program, but he was unable to recover from an unlucky fall.

Which word in the sentence is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** skater
**B.** powerfull
**C.** recover
**D.** unlucky

**7.** Read the following sentences.

> In September the geese fly south. They follow their leader and return in Jewn.

What change should be made to these sentences?

**A.** change **September** to **september**
**B.** change **geese** to **gooses**
**C.** change **leader** to **leeder**
**D.** change **Jewn** to **June**



GO ON

**8.** Read the following sentence.

> It was helpful to preepay the baker so the cake could be ready on Sunday.

Which word in the sentence is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** helpful
**B.** preepay
**C.** baker
**D.** Sunday

**9.** Read the following sentences.

> Preschool begins the first Moonday in September. Put that date on your calendar.

Which word in the sentences is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** Preschool
**B.** Moonday
**C.** September
**D.** calendar

**10.** Read the following sentence.

> It was unfair to the person giving the speech that the restless children made so much noise.

Which word could be used to replace the **person giving the speech**?

**A.** speaker
**B.** owner
**C.** painter
**D.** listener

**11.** Read the following sentence.

> The women asked the banker to recheck her October balance.

What change should be made to this sentence?

**A.** change **women** to **woman**
**B.** change **banker** to **bankir**
**C.** change **recheck** to **rechek**
**D.** change **October** to **Oktober**

**12.** Read the following sentence.

> The singer was cheerfull because the reporter gave her a good review.

What change should be made to this sentence?

**A.** change **singer** to **singor**
**B.** change **cheerfull** to **cheerful**
**C.** change **reporter** to **reportor**
**D.** change **review** to **revue**

**13.** Read the following list of alphabetized words.

> uncover
> unfair
> untie
> useless

The word **unhappy** should follow the word

**A.** uncover
**B.** unfair
**C.** untie
**D.** useless

**14.** Read the following sentences.

> The book review is due on Wensday. Be sure to proofread it on Tuesday.

Which word in the sentences is spelled INCORRECTLY?

**A.** review
**B.** Wensday
**C.** proofread
**D.** Tuesday

**15.** In which word below is the plural formed INCORRECTLY?

**A.** children
**B.** women
**C.** leafs
**D.** men

# Writer's Workshop

Enrichment

## Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics

### Adjectives

An **adjective** usually describes a noun or a pronoun. It tells what the noun or pronoun is like. Adjectives can tell what kind, how many, or which one.

- what kind:
  The **friendly** dog wagged its **bushy** tail.
- how many:
  We ate **three** pizzas in **one** hour!
- which one:
  **This** computer cannot solve **that** problem.

**Practice Activity A**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**Practice Activity B**

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

**Practice Activity**

**A.** Write the adjective in each sentence.

1. Tara looked for the correct key.
2. Don't use a dull pencil.
3. Yesterday was a chilly day for a picnic.
4. What a delicious drink you made!
5. I snuggled in the soft blanket.

**B.** Fill in the blanks with other adjectives from the spelling lists in Units 25–29.

6. Jon wore a _____ smile.
7. One _____ act could ruin the project.
8. A _____ storm damaged trees and buildings.
9. Throw out that _____ lamp.
10. I appreciate your _____ act of kindness.

# The Writing Process: Informative/Explanatory

## Writing a Business Letter

### PREWRITING

Does it bother you that people talk on cell phones while driving their cars? Do you think your community needs more parks? A good way to voice your complaints or opinions is to write a business letter. Your teacher can help you find addresses of community officials to whom you can write. As you think about an area of concern in your community, make an outline for your letter.

### DRAFTING

Use your outline to write a business letter. As you state your case, make sure you have all six parts of a business letter: heading, inside address, salutation, body, closing, and signature. It is important to be polite in your letter, too. Use as many spelling words as possible.

### REVISING

When you have finished your first draft, read your letter from beginning to end. Check to see if you have included all of the points in your outline. Did you offer a solution to the problem? Now write your final draft.

### EDITING

Use the **Editing Checklist** to proofread your letter. Look for three words that could be misspelled and circle them. Use a print or online dictionary to check the spelling. Be sure to use proofreading marks when you make corrections.

### PUBLISHING

Make a copy of your business letter. If you wrote about a real concern, have an adult help you mail it, or you can share it with your classmates.

### EDITING CHECKLIST

#### Spelling

- ✓ Circle words that contain the spelling patterns and rules learned in Units 25–29.
- ✓ Check the circled words in your **Spelling Dictionary**.
- ✓ Check for other spelling errors.

#### Capital Letters

- ✓ Capitalize important words in the title.
- ✓ Capitalize the first word in each sentence.
- ✓ Capitalize proper nouns.

#### Punctuation

- ✓ End each sentence with the correct punctuation.
- ✓ Use commas, apostrophes, and quotation marks correctly.

#### Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics

- ✓ Use adjectives correctly to make sentences more interesting.

# Unit 31 Consonant Sounds: /sh/, /zh/

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** election | *election* | I voted in the class **election**. |
| **2.** invitation | *invitation* | I got an **invitation** to the party. |
| **3.** shadow | *shadow* | A **shadow** fell over the table. |
| **4.** motion | *motion* | Wind causes most of a wave's **motion**. |
| **5.** shoulder | *shoulder* | My **shoulder** aches this morning. |
| **6.** dictionary | *dictionary* | Look up that word in the **dictionary**. |
| **7.** fiction | *fiction* | The story is not true; it is **fiction**. |
| **8.** abolish | *abolish* | I wish we could **abolish** war. |
| **9.** division | *division* | Long **division** is hard for me. |
| **10.** multiplication | *multiplication* | I know my **multiplication** facts. |
| **11.** patient | *patient* | The **patient** tigress fed three cubs. |
| **12.** publish | *publish* | Mary will **publish** her diary. |
| **13.** shelter | *shelter* | Alex ran to the barn for **shelter**. |
| **14.** constellation | *constellation* | The big dipper is a **constellation**. |
| **15.** magician | *magician* | Houdini was a master **magician**. |
| **16.** constitution | *constitution* | I helped write our club's **constitution**. |
| **17.** imitation | *imitation* | Do your **imitation** of a lion's roar. |
| **18.** capitalization | *capitalization* | I learned when to use **capitalization**. |
| **19.** confusion | *confusion* | There was **confusion** on the long line. |
| **20.** exclamation | *exclamation* | An **exclamation** mark can express joy. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–5.** Write the words that begin or end with **sh**.
**6–16.** Write the words that include **tion**.
**17.** Write the word that ends in **cian**.
**18–19.** Write the words that end in **sion**.
**20.** Write the word that ends in **tient**.

**begin or end with sh**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**include tion**

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

**end in cian**

17. _____

**end in sion**

18. _____
19. _____

**end in tient**

20. _____

**Remember**

The /**sh**/ sound can be spelled **sh** as in **shelter**. Other ways to spell /**sh**/ appear in these patterns: **tion (fiction), cian (magician),** and **tient (patient)**. The /**zh**/ sound appears in the **sion** pattern **(division)**.

Spelling Tutor

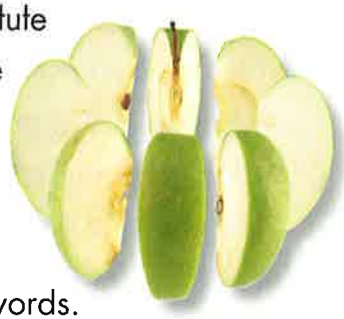
# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 31

## Add Suffixes

Change the base words as needed to add the Latin suffix **-ion,** meaning "the result of," to write spelling words. Circle the letters that spell /**sh**/ or /**zh**/ in each word.

1. capitalize
2. elect
3. invite
4. multiply
5. exclaim
6. constitute
7. divide



## Word Meanings

Write the spelling word that has the same or almost the same meaning as each group of words.

8. the rules and laws of a government
9. use of a capital letter
10. performer of magic tricks
11. made-up story
12. result of a mix-up
13. process of separating into equal parts
14. excited declaration
15. request for someone's attendance
16. good at waiting

### Use the Dictionary

Many English words come from other languages. For example, the word **election** originally came from the Latin word **ēligere,** meaning "to pick out, select." Write the spelling words that came from these words.

17. Latin **abolēre,** meaning "to die out"
18. Old English **sceadu,** meaning "shade"
19. Old English **scield,** meaning "shield"
20. Latin **constēllātiō,** meaning "set with stars"

**Dictionary Check** Be sure to check the word histories in your **Spelling Dictionary**.

Add Suffixes

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

Word Meanings

8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Use the Dictionary

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| election | invitation | shadow | motion | shoulder |
| dictionary | fiction | abolish | division | multiplication |
| patient | publish | shelter | constellation | magician |
| constitution | imitation | capitalization | confusion | exclamation |

## Complete the Analogies

Write a spelling word to complete each analogy.

1. **Promote** is to **promotion** as **move** is to _____.
2. **Expect** is to **expectation** as **imitate** is to _____.
3. **Bread** is to **food** as **house** is to _____.
4. **Add** is to **addition** as **multiply** is to _____.
5. **Synonym** is to **thesaurus** as **definition** is to _____.
6. **Leg** is to **hip** as **arm** is to _____.
7. **Select** is to **selection** as **elect** is to _____.

## Complete the Groups

The first two words in each group are parts of a whole. Write the spelling word that names the whole.

8. ballot, vote: _____
9. roof, walls: _____
10. print, distribute: _____
11. run, jump: _____
12. word, definition: _____
13. stars, shape: _____

## Use Context Clues

Write a spelling word to complete each idiom, saying, or quote.

14. When you *put your* _____ *to the wheel,* you contribute to an effort.
15. Some say that _____ *is the sincerest form of flattery.*
16. In which state is everyone mixed up? It is the state of _____.
17. If something is *beyond a* _____ *of a doubt,* there are no doubts about it.
18. "It's no wonder that truth is stranger than _____. _____ has to make sense." —Mark Twain (American author)
19. "The end of law is not to _____ or restrain, but to preserve and enlarge freedom." —John Locke (English philosopher)
20. "If I have done the public any service, it is due to my _____ thought." —Sir Isaac Newton (English mathematician)

Complete the Analogies

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

Complete the Groups

8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____

Use Context Clues

14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

## Proofread a Diary Entry

Proofread the diary entry below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the diary entry. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections indicated by the proofreading marks.

¶ I am so happy that I accepted Lu Ann's invitashun to her birthday party. It was so much fun. Her father pretended he was a magition. He even wore a cape over his sholder⊙ Her brother did an imitacian of each one of us. ≡there was some confushon about who was being imitated, but that just added to the fun. Her ⁄Mother showed us how to make shado puppets. She was very pashent with us when we didn't quite get it. Lu Ann's Uncle Joe took moshun pictures of ~~of~~ the whole party. He also took some still photographs that he says he's going to publis on his online blog. That party was the dicianary definition of a great time!

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ∧ Add
- ~~ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Narrative Writing

### Write a Diary Entry

Write a diary entry of your own. Remember, the reason to write a diary entry is to help you remember an important personal experience and how you felt. Use as many spelling words as you can in your diary entry.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- As you write, imagine that you will read the entry several years from now. Use language that you will remember.
- Use correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your writing. Circle three words that may be misspelled. Use a print dictionary to check the spelling.

### Transfer

Write three words from your diary entry. Each word should have the /**sh**/ sound spelled differently. Circle the letters that spell the /**sh**/ sound in each word.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| finish | shadow | multiplication | imitation | direction |
| auction | motion | patient | capitalization | caution |
| erosion | shoulder | publish | confusion | electrician |
| addition | dictionary | shelter | exclamation | emotion |
| blush | fiction | constellation | suction | attention |
| election | abolish | magician | mention | vision |
| invitation | division | constitution | conclusion | musician |

**Pattern Power**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

**Suffixes**

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____

**Latin Roots**

18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

## Pattern Power

**1–5.** Write the four-syllable words that contain the /**sh**/ sound spelled **ti**.

**6–8.** Write the words that end like **polish** and have more than one syllable.

## Suffixes

**A.** Change these base words as needed to add the suffix **-ion,** meaning "the result of," to form a spelling word. Circle the letters that spell /**sh**/ or /**zh**/ in each word.

**9.** add
**10.** erode
**11.** conclude
**12.** direct
**13.** attend
**14.** emote
**15.** capitalize

**B.** Add the suffix **-ian** meaning "one who" to each word below to form a spelling word. Circle the letters that spell /**sh**/.

**16.** magic
**17.** electric

## Latin Roots

Write the spelling words that come from these Latin roots.

**18. fic** meaning "to make"

**19–20. mot** meaning "to move"

# Math

# Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below. Look for words with the /**sh**/ sound spelled **si, sh, ci,** or **ti** and the /**zh**/ sound spelled **si**.

Addition and subtraction are inverse, or opposite, operations. They reverse, or "undo," each other. The inverse of 5 + 9 = 14 is 14 – 9 = 5. You started with 5. You ended with 5.

I predict that this rule will also work with division and multiplication. You know that 32 ÷ 4 = 8. What number times 4 equals 32? We're back to 8! My prediction is right on.

Let's get out our calculators and try greater numbers. Punch in 5,235 × 122. Your product should be 638,670. Now try 638,670 ÷ 122. I predict that the answer will be 5,235. Was I right?

Try this. What is 162 × 3,685? Did we get the same answer to that question? I got 596,970. What's 596,970 ÷ 3,685? It should be 162.

I'm no magician. I'm not even a mathematician, but I know the rule of inverse operations! You know it also. Tell it to your family. Watch the surprised expressions on their faces. Explain the rule to them. They'll appreciate it.

You can use this rule a lot. As your math becomes more advanced, you'll learn versions of other rules as well.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

**1–3.** Write the three-syllable words that contain the /**sh**/ sound spelled **ti**.

**4–6.** Write the plural words that contain the /**sh**/ or /**zh**/ sound spelled **ti** or **si**.

**7–8.** Write the five-syllable words that contain the /**sh**/ sound.

**9.** Write the three-syllable word that contains the /**zh**/ sound spelled **si**.

**10.** Write the word that contains the /**sh**/ sound spelled **sh**.

# Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. farmer's | *farmer's* | We brought in the **farmer's** crops. |
| 2. poets' | *poets'* | The **poets'** haikus were read. |
| 3. group's | *group's* | They finished the **group's** work. |
| 4. calf's | *calf's* | A **calf's** legs are long and weak. |
| 5. watches' | *watches'* | The **watches'** faces were identical. |
| 6. fish's | *fish's* | That **fish's** tail is forked. |
| 7. poem's | *poem's* | The **poem's** last line was a surprise. |
| 8. calves' | *calves'* | The **calves'** mothers watch over them. |
| 9. brother's | *brother's* | This is my **brother's** book. |
| 10. herd's | *herd's* | The **herd's** pasture is on the hill. |
| 11. couples' | *couples'* | We accepted the **couples'** ideas. |
| 12. mother's | *mother's* | Anna is my **mother's** best friend. |
| 13. wives' | *wives'* | They listened to their **wives'** views. |
| 14. child's | *child's* | Read a **child's** book to youngsters. |
| 15. fathers' | *fathers'* | The coach liked the **fathers'** plans. |
| 16. daughter's | *daughter's* | Her **daughter's** name is Pamela. |
| 17. sisters' | *sisters'* | The **sisters'** reunion was a success. |
| 18. children's | *children's* | We heard the **children's** laughter. |
| 19. wife's | *wife's* | He appreciated his **wife's** gift. |
| 20. sons' | *sons'* | All his **sons'** names begin with J. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–12.** Write the words that end with an apostrophe + **s** (**-'s**).

**13–20.** Write the words that end with an **s** + apostrophe (**-s'**).

**Remember**

Add **'s** to show ownership when a noun is singular. Add **'** to show ownership when a plural noun ends in **-s**. When a plural noun does not end in **-s**, add **'s** to show ownership (**children's**).

**Spelling Tutor**

end with -'s

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

end with -s'

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 32

## Plurals

1. Write the spelling word with the plural formed by adding **-es**.

2–3. Write the spelling words with the plural formed by changing **f** to **v** and adding **-es**.

4. Write the spelling word in which the plural form does not end in **s** or **sh**.

5. Write the word in which the plural and singular forms are the same.

## Plural Possessives

Each word below is the singular possessive form of a noun. Write the spelling word that is the plural possessive form of the same noun.

**6.** wife's
**7.** poet's
**8.** couple's
**9.** son's
**10.** father's
**11.** sister's

## Singular Possessives

Each word below is the plural possessive form of a noun. Write the spelling word that is the singular possessive form of the same noun.

**12.** herds'
**13.** wives'
**14.** groups'
**15.** poems'
**16.** calves'
**17.** mothers'
**18.** brothers'
**19.** daughters'

### Use the Dictionary

**20.** Which spelling word can be used as a singular possessive and a plural possessive?

**Dictionary Check** Check your answer by finding the base word and a plural form of the word in your **Spelling Dictionary**.

Plurals

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Plural Possessives

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

Singular Possessives

12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____

Use the Dictionary

20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| farmer's | poets' | group's | calf's | watches' |
| fish's | poem's | calves' | brother's | herd's |
| couples' | mother's | wives' | child's | fathers' |
| daughter's | sisters' | children's | wife's | sons' |

## Form the Possessives

Write the spelling word that is the possessive form of each word.

1. the lines of the poem; the _____ lines
2. the project of the group; the _____ project
3. the idea of the wife; the _____ idea
4. the crop of the farmer; the _____ crop
5. the feed for the calves; the _____ feed
6. the faces of the children; the _____ faces
7. the fins of the fish; the _____ fins
8. the meeting of the wives; the _____ meeting

## Use Context Clues

Complete each sentence by writing the correct possessive form of each of the words in parentheses.

9. This is the spotted _____ collar. (calf)
10. All the _____ names are on this list. (father)
11. The farmer painted the _____ barn. (herd)
12. Thursday was the sick _____ last day of school. (child)
13. Three _____ works were read at the library program. (poet)
14. All the _____ bands are made of the same fabric. (watch)
15. Both of my _____ rooms are decorated differently. (sister)
16. His only _____ birthday is in June. (daughter)
17. I laughed at my _____ joke when he told it. (brother)
18. My _____ car is in the driveway. (mother)
19. Her two _____ toys were put away neatly. (son)
20. My mom and dad went to the _____ picnic. (couple)

## Form the Possessives

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

## Use Context Clues

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 32

## Proofread an Ad

Proofread the ad below for ten errors in the spelling words. Then rewrite the ad. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

**Inexpensive Travel**

¶Got the winter doldrums!? Don't know how to spend the long, Dark nights? Why not curl up with a good book? reading is a farmers' escape, a wifes tropical trip, a childs' adventure, and a daughters dream. Between the covers of a book lie a poems appeal and a fathers tender tale. Best books has it all—even a childrens' section and two poets corners. Also, our book groups meetings are many couples night out.

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ⌒ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Opinion Writing

### Write a Newspaper Ad

Write or type an ad offering something for sale. Think of people who would want to buy your item. Include a description of the item and the advantages to the reader of buying your product. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Include at least three reasons to buy the item.
- Use convincing language to make the reader want to buy the item.
- Use complete sentences with correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your writing. Circle three words that could be misspelled. Use an electronic spell checker to check the spelling.

**Transfer**

Write three possessive plurals from your ad in your Spelling Journal. Next to each word, write its possessive singular form.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| city's | brother's | sons' | herd's | youth's |
| geese's | mother's | farmer's | couples' | tourists' |
| grandmother's | child's | poets' | wives' | infant's |
| grandfather's | fathers' | group's | daughter's | nephew's |
| pies' | sisters' | calf's | actors' | crowd's |
| watches' | children's | poem's | artist's | umpires' |
| fish's | wife's | calves' | company's | runners' |

## Meaning Mastery

**1–12.** Write the words that tell that a single person owns something.

## Plurals

**13–14.** Write the spelling words whose plurals are formed by changing **y** to **i** and adding **-es**.

**15–16.** Write the plural possessive form of **goose** and **child**.

## Homophones

Write the spelling words whose base words are homophones of these words.

**17.** sun

**18.** heard

## Silent Letters

**19.** Write the two possessive spelling words with silent **l**.

## Word History

**20.** The Old English word **wif** meant "wife." Write the spelling word you would use to translate into modern English the possessive plural of **wif**.

Meaning Mastery

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Plurals

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Homophones

17. _____
18. _____

Silent Letters

19. _____

Word History

20. _____

# Language Arts

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for words that show possession.

The Grimm brothers and the Brontë sisters are alike in some ways and different in other ways. They were all writers. The Brontë sisters' stories are found in the adults' section of the library. Each sister wrote her own books. The Grimm brothers' stories are fairy tales that are found in the children's section of the library. The brothers wrote their books together.

Charlotte, Emily, and Anne Brontë grew up in England. Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm grew up in Germany.

The Grimms' collection of fairy tales was first published in 1812. It contained such favorites as "Cinderella," "Sleeping Beauty," and "Snow White." Walt Disney's movies added to the popularity of these tales. Mrs. Grimm would have been surprised at her sons' success. She expected them to become lawyers.

The Brontë sisters' stories were published in the mid-1800s. Charlotte's most well-known book is *Jane Eyre*. Emily's *Wuthering Heights* has many fans. The least known of the Brontës' books is Anne's *The Tenant of Wildfell Hall*.

There is one really big difference between the Grimms and the Brontës. Jacob and Wilhelm used their own names. The Brontës had to use men's names. There was a prejudice against women writers in the Brontës' time. Thank goodness that has changed!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

**1–8.** Write the singular possessive form of each plural possessive in the selection.

**9–10.** Write the plural nouns in the selection that do not end in **s** and are written as plural possessives.

# Unit 33 Base Words With Suffixes: -ness, -ment

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** kindness | *kindness* | He always treats people with **kindness**. |
| **2.** treatment | *treatment* | When you are ill, you need **treatment**. |
| **3.** stillness | *stillness* | I left in the **stillness** of the night. |
| **4.** apartment | *apartment* | She lives in a large **apartment**. |
| **5.** fitness | *fitness* | They use **fitness** equipment at home. |
| **6.** pavement | *pavement* | The **pavement** was wet with rain. |
| **7.** weakness | *weakness* | Arriving late is his **weakness**. |
| **8.** shipment | *shipment* | A **shipment** of goods arrived today. |
| **9.** brightness | *brightness* | The sun's **brightness** made me squint. |
| **10.** agreement | *agreement* | We will try to reach an **agreement**. |
| **11.** placement | *placement* | Father works at a **placement** bureau. |
| **12.** illness | *illness* | He is at home because of **illness**. |
| **13.** enjoyment | *enjoyment* | Her **enjoyment** of the movie was clear. |
| **14.** darkness | *darkness* | I stumbled in the **darkness**. |
| **15.** movement | *movement* | We studied the **movement** of the stars. |
| **16.** softness | *softness* | The blanket's **softness** was comforting. |
| **17.** boldness | *boldness* | The **boldness** of his plan surprised us. |
| **18.** payment | *payment* | Expect the first **payment** next week. |
| **19.** thickness | *thickness* | She measured the **thickness** of the wall. |
| **20.** sadness | *sadness* | He has known great **sadness** and joy. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–11.** Write the words with the suffix **-ness**.

**12–20.** Write the words with the suffix **-ment**.

**Remember**

The suffix **-ness** means "a condition or quality": **kindness**. The suffix **-ment** means "the result of an action": **enjoyment**. The base word usually does not change.

Spelling Tutor

**-ness**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

**-ment**

12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

## Add Suffixes

The suffix **-ness** means "a condition or quality." Add **-ness** to each word below to change it from an adjective to a noun.

1. fit
2. kind
3. sad
4. bold
5. bright
6. soft
7. still
8. weak
9. thick

The suffix **-ment** means "the result of an action." Add **-ment** to each word below to change it from a verb to a noun. Circle the **e** or **y** at the ending of any of the base words. Notice that the ending does not change when the suffix is added because the suffix does not start with a vowel.

10. agree
11. place
12. pay
13. pave
14. move
15. treat
16. enjoy

### Use the Thesaurus

Write a spelling word for each pair of synonyms below.

17. gloom; blackout
18. flat; suite
19. cargo; freight
20. ailment; malady

**Thesaurus Check** Be sure to check the synonyms in your **Writing Thesaurus**.

**Add Suffixes**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

**Use the Thesaurus**

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Unit 33

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| kindness | treatment | stillness | apartment | fitness |
| pavement | weakness | shipment | brightness | agreement |
| placement | illness | enjoyment | darkness | movement |
| softness | boldness | payment | thickness | sadness |

## Make Inferences

Write a spelling word by adding **-ness** or **-ment** to each underlined word.

1. The ship is carrying a large _____.
2. When they pave this road, the _____ will be easier to ride on.
3. Kind people bring out _____ in others.
4. This thick board is the same _____ as those other boards.
5. As you move your arms, follow the _____ of the dance director.
6. Please pay your bill by sending your _____ by mail.
7. We agree that he should sign the _____ today.
8. His bold words match the _____ of his personality.
9. The doctors will treat certain injuries at a special _____ center.
10. As you place the pieces in the jigsaw puzzle, their _____ will help create a picture.

## Write the Antonyms

Write the spelling word that is an antonym of each of the following words.

11. hardness
12. health
13. dimness
14. happiness
15. brightness

## Use Context Clues

Write the spelling words that complete the paragraph.

The accident left Martha weak. Each day, in the **16.** _____ of her small **17.** _____, she worked with physical **18.** _____ equipment to overcome her **19.** _____. Although it was hard work, she felt much **20.** _____ because she knew that one day she would be strong again.

**fitness**
**weakness**
**stillness**
**enjoyment**
**apartment**

Make Inferences

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Write the Antonyms

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____

Use Context Clues

16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

Unit 33

## Proofread a Note

Proofread the note below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the note. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

Dear Maria

Cindy's apartmint is beautiful. The briteness and warmth of the sun streaming through her windows are comforting. At night, the stilness of the street lulls me to sleep. I try to repay her kindniss by going with her to her fitnes class. We get a lot of enjoiment from each other's company. You were were right. This is good treatmint for my saddness. cindy's nice not to expect any paymennt while I stay here. We made an agreemint that I would help with the cooking and cleaning. I'll call you this weekend.

love,

Sharon

**Proofreading Marks**

- Make Uppercase
- Make Lowercase
- Add
- Delete
- Add a Period
- Indent

## Informative/Explanatory Writing

### Write a Note

Write or type a note to a friend with some news about what you are doing. Include the date, a greeting, and your news. Write a closing with your signature. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Use descriptive details to help the reader visualize what you are doing and feeling.
- Use complete sentences with correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your writing. Circle three words that could be misspelled. Use an electronic spell checker to check the spelling.

### Transfer

Choose two words from your note that have the suffix **-ness** and two words that have the suffix **-ment**. Write the words in your Spelling Journal. Circle each suffix and underline the base words.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| highness | agreement | treatment | softness | tardiness |
| rightness | illness | fitness | boldness | smoothness |
| roundness | enjoyment | pavement | payment | restfulness |
| mildness | darkness | weakness | argument | happiness |
| kindness | movement | shipment | employment | emptiness |
| stillness | thickness | brightness | government | wonderment |
| apartment | sadness | placement | sickness | |

## Pattern Power

Write words from the spelling list above to answer the questions.

**1–2.** Which spelling words have base words with the **long e** sound spelled **ea** in the middle?

**3–8.** Which spelling words have base words ending in **y**?

**9–12.** Which spelling words have base words that end in silent **e** and have a long vowel sound?

## Suffixes

**A.** Add the suffix **-ness** or **-ment** to each word below. Circle the word in which the silent **e** is dropped before adding the suffix.

**13.** govern **14.** ill **15.** thick **16.** argue **17.** ship

**B.** The suffix **-ly** means "like." Write the spelling words that are forms of these words.

**18.** darkly **19.** boldly **20.** softly

Pattern Power

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Suffixes

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Science

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below. Look for words with the suffix **-ness** or **-ment**.

Scientists are detectives. They don't investigate crimes, but they have a commitment to investigate the world around them.

First, they ask a question. Next, they hypothesize, or make a good guess, about the answer. Then they experiment to test the correctness of their guess.

Let's suppose we are botanists, or scientists who study plants. Hydroponics is the process in which seeds sprout in water. Our awareness of this process leads us to see if we can improve it. We want to make an assessment of liquids in which seeds can grow.

Our hypothesis, or guess, is that since seeds grow in water, they can grow in other liquids. We might try orange juice, milk, or even club soda. We will test each liquid. A requirement is that the management of the test is controlled. To guarantee fairness, each liquid will receive the same treatment. We will use the same amount in the same size containers. The same type of seed will be placed in each liquid.

We will record what happens to the seeds. At the end of the experiment, the question of whether seeds can grow in liquids other than water might be answered. What will the answer be? I don't know. Try the experiment yourself to find out. Join in on the excitement of scientific discovery.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

**1–3.** Write each base word to which the suffix **-ness** has been added.
**4–9.** Write each base word to which the suffix **-ment** has been added.
**10.** Write the word that has the same root word as **experience** to which the suffix **-ment** has been added.

# Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** tablecloth | *tablecloth* | We use a red and white **tablecloth**. |
| **2.** everyone | *everyone* | Was **everyone** at the soccer game? |
| **3.** nearby | *nearby* | We walk to school, which is **nearby**. |
| **4.** outdoors | *outdoors* | We play **outdoors** when it is warm. |
| **5.** high school | *high school* | My older brother is in **high school**. |
| **6.** anywhere | *anywhere* | You may sit **anywhere** you wish. |
| **7.** flashlight | *flashlight* | I need a **flashlight** to find my way. |
| **8.** air mail | *air mail* | A plane carrying **air mail** landed. |
| **9.** whenever | *whenever* | We can go **whenever** he is ready. |
| **10.** driveway | *driveway* | The car is parked in the **driveway**. |
| **11.** sometimes | *sometimes* | I walk to school **sometimes**. |
| **12.** seat belt | *seat belt* | Use your **seat belt** when in a car. |
| **13.** basketball | *basketball* | She is our new **basketball** coach. |
| **14.** mailbox | *mailbox* | I dropped the letter in the **mailbox**. |
| **15.** babysitter | *babysitter* | She is a **babysitter** for the twins. |
| **16.** upstairs | *upstairs* | My bedroom is **upstairs**. |
| **17.** everyday | *everyday* | That is one of my **everyday** chores. |
| **18.** alarm clock | *alarm clock* | I set the **alarm clock** for 7:30. |
| **19.** newspaper | *newspaper* | We read a **newspaper** every day. |
| **20.** weekend | *weekend* | The **weekend** at the lake will be fun. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–16.** Write the compound words that are written as one word.

**17–20.** Write the compound words that are written as two words.

**one-word compound**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

**two-word compound**

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

**Remember**

A **compound word** is formed from two or more smaller words. Closed compounds are written as one word. Open compounds are written as two separate words.

Spelling Tutor

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 34

## Word Meanings

Write the spelling word that is made by combining each of the following definitions.

1. an infant/one who rests on the lower part of the body
2. information/a sheet of processed wood or vegetable fibers
3. a container usually made of straw or rope/a round object
4. tall/a place of learning
5. a period of seven days in a month/final
6. almost/close
7. top/a series of steps
8. apart from the boundaries/openings to a structure
9. all inclusive/single
10. not particular/a location

## Plurals

11. Write the spelling word whose plural is formed by adding **-es**.
12. Write the open compound that is the same in singular and plural form.

### Use the Dictionary

Find the following words in your **Spelling Dictionary**. Write each word. Then write **n.**, **adj.**, **adv.**, or **conj.** after it to name the part of speech it usually has.

13. whenever
14. seat belt
15. tablecloth
16. everyday
17. flashlight
18. sometimes
19. driveway
20. alarm clock

**Word Meanings**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

**Plurals**

11. _____
12. _____

**Use the Dictionary**

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Unit 34

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| tablecloth | high school | whenever | basketball | everyday |
| everyone | anywhere | driveway | mailbox | alarm clock |
| nearby | flashlight | sometimes | babysitter | newspaper |
| outdoors | air mail | seat belt | upstairs | weekend |

**Replace the Words**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**Use Context Clues**

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____

**Complete the Analogies**

16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

## Replace the Words

Replace the underlined part of each sentence with a spelling word.

1. Every person can be seated now.
2. The person who takes care of children arrived.
3. Some post offices used to have a special slot for mail that is sent by air.
4. We subscribe to a daily news printed on sheets of paper.
5. I now and then listen to the radio.

## Use Context Clues

Write the spelling word that completes each sentence and contains the word in parentheses.

6. I always wear a _____ when riding in a car. (seat)
7. We have old dishes that Mom calls her _____ tableware. (day)
8. I was late yesterday because my _____ did not ring. (clock)
9. I would rather be _____ than indoors. (doors)
10. My father parks his car in our _____. (way)
11. Was there a letter in the _____? (mail)
12. I need a bright _____ for my camping trips. (flash)
13. Please put the lace _____ on the table. (table)
14. Our school will have a _____ game tonight. (basket)
15. I squint _____ the sun is in my eyes. (when)

## Complete the Analogies

Write spelling words to complete the analogies.

16. **Wednesday** is to **weekday** as **Saturday** is to _____.
17. **Fourth grade** is to **elementary school** as **tenth grade** is to _____.
18. **Distant** is to **faraway** as **close** is to _____.
19. **First floor** is to **downstairs** as **second floor** is to _____.
20. **No one** is to **anyone** as **nowhere** is to _____.

# Connections to WRITING

## Proofread a Letter to the Editor

Proofread the letter below for ten errors in compound words. Then rewrite the letter. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

To the editor:

I disagree with the Article in your news paper stating that highskool baskettball games should be banned because students behave badly. It is true that sometimes students act as if they need a babysiter but that hardly includes everyon Wenever there is a game, most students do not cause trouble.

Troublemakers can show up aneewhere, whether the event is in the school gym, owtdoors, nearbye, or far away from the school building. School Sports should not be banned.

I am putting this letter in the malebox now. I hope you publish it.

yours truly,

Jonah Wise

**Proofreading Marks**

- Make Uppercase
- Make Lowercase
- Add
- Delete
- Add a Period
- Indent

## Opinion Writing

### Write a Letter to the Editor

Write or type a letter to the editor of a newspaper to give your opinion about an article that the newspaper published. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Tell why you agree or disagree with the information in the article. Support your opinions with reasons and details.
- Use complete sentences with correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Circle three words that could be misspelled. Use a print or online dictionary to check the spelling.

### Transfer

Choose two open and two closed compound words from your letter. Write the words in your Spelling Journal. Circle the smaller words that make up each compound word.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| anybody | outdoors | newspaper | mailbox | itself |
| anything | anywhere | tablecloth | babysitter | peanut butter |
| everything | whenever | high school | alarm clock | yearbook |
| someone | sometimes | flashlight | weekend | floodlight |
| something | basketball | air mail | downstairs | field trip |
| everyone | upstairs | driveway | good-bye | third base |
| nearby | everyday | seat belt | homework | zip code |

## Pattern Power

Use words from the spelling list above to complete these exercises. Check your answers in your **Spelling Dictionary**.

**1–8.** Write the compound spelling words that have the **long a** sound spelled **a, ay, ai or a-consonant-e**. Circle the letter or letters that spell that sound.

**9–12.** Write the compound spelling words that have the **long e** sound spelled **ea, ee,** or **ie**. Circle the letter or letters that spell that sound.

## Word Building

Replace the underlined letters in each word below to form a closed compound word.

**13.** yearly

**14.** home plate

**15.** outer space

**16.** upside down

**17.** floodplain

**18.** basketful

**19.** flashing

**20.** newsstand

Pattern Power

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Word Building

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Technology

## Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for open and closed compound words.

People once rushed to the mailbox to check their mail. We don't do that anymore. We sit down at the computer keyboard, check our e-mail, and dash off a reply.

E-mail works a lot like postal mail. At the post office, mail is sorted according to zip codes. E-mail has a kind of zip code called a *domain*. In an e-mail address, the domain name follows the @ sign. It tells where the e-mail is to go.

Each domain name belongs to an IP (Internet Protocol) address. It is stored in an electronic mailbox called a *domain registry*. This is getting kind of complicated, isn't it? All you really need to know is that once you click "send," your e-mail goes to the domain registry. There, the IP address is checked like the address on an envelope. Then the e-mail quickly goes on its way.

Don't underestimate letter writing, though. It is special to receive a handwritten letter that isn't full of chat abbreviations like LOL. A letter writer would never write "How RU" to find out how you're feeling.

You know the expression "Different strokes for different folks"? Well, whether you use keystrokes or pen strokes, the blueprint for a long-lasting friendship is the same—keep in touch!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

## WORD SORT

Write a compound word from the selection that matches each definition.

1. any longer
2. a place on a computer to input letters
3. a place where regular mail is sorted
4. to think less of
5. longhand
6. a drawing of a design

# Unit 35 Words About Our World

## Connections to THINKING

**Read** the spelling words and sentences.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Greek | *Greek* | He is of **Greek** ancestry. |
| 2. Russian | *Russian* | Our dog is a **Russian** wolfhound. |
| 3. Africa | *Africa* | They went on a safari in **Africa**. |
| 4. American | *American* | That is an **American** automobile. |
| 5. Europe | *Europe* | She traveled in **Europe** all summer. |
| 6. Indian | *Indian* | The **Indian** capital is New Delhi. |
| 7. Japanese | *Japanese* | We saw a **Japanese** temple. |
| 8. Australia | *Australia* | **Australia** is a small continent. |
| 9. French | *French* | I studied the **French** language. |
| 10. Antarctica | *Antarctica* | **Antarctica** is a cold, icy continent. |
| 11. Canadian | *Canadian* | Ontario is a **Canadian** province. |
| 12. Chinese | *Chinese* | The **Chinese** have an ancient culture. |
| 13. Mexican | *Mexican* | Do you cook **Mexican** dishes? |
| 14. Spanish | *Spanish* | Are your relatives of **Spanish** descent? |
| 15. America | *America* | **America** consists of two continents. |
| 16. German | *German* | We watched the **German** folk dancers. |
| 17. Italian | *Italian* | I love **Italian** food. |
| 18. British | *British* | Which countries are **British**? |
| 19. Asia | *Asia* | Laos is a country in **Asia**. |
| 20. Irish | *Irish* | We enjoy singing **Irish** songs. |

**Think & Sort** the spelling words.

**1–6.** Write the words that name a place.

**7–20.** Write the words that relate to a place.

**Remember**

It is important to be able to spell words that name and describe places in our world.

**Spelling Tutor**

**name a place**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

**relate to a place**

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to VOCABULARY

Unit 35

## Word Meanings

Write the name of the nationality that goes with the name of each of the following countries. Circle the letters that spell /**sh**/.

1. China
2. Russia
3. Ireland
4. France
5. America
6. Mexico
7. Great Britain

## Beginnings and Endings

**8–12.** Write the names of the continents that begin and end with the letter **a**.

## Suffixes

The adjective suffixes **-ish, -an, -ian** and **-ese** mean "like." Write the spelling word with the correct suffix to describe each nation. Circle any letters that spell /**sh**/.

13. Japan
14. Germany
15. Spain
16. Canada

### Use the Dictionary

**17–20.** Write the following spelling words in alphabetical order.

Italian Greek Europe Indian

**Dictionary Check** Be sure to check the alphabetical order of the words in your **Spelling Dictionary**.

Word Meanings

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

Beginnings and Endings

8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Suffixes

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Use the Dictionary

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to READING

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Greek | Europe | French | Mexican | Italian |
| Russian | Indian | Antarctica | Spanish | British |
| Africa | Japanese | Canadian | America | Asia |
| American | Australia | Chinese | German | Irish |

## Word Categorization

Write the spelling word that is suggested by each of the following groups of words.

1. panda bears, chopsticks, Great Wall
2. maple leaf, hockey, provinces
3. shamrocks, Blarney Stone, green fields
4. snow, ice, whales, penguins
5. kangaroos, koala bears, boomerangs
6. Paris, Louvre Museum, Eiffel Tower
7. Big Ben, London, Buckingham Palace
8. Olympics, mythology, Athens

## Use Context Clues

Write the spelling word that completes each sentence. Use a print or online encyclopedia to check your answers.

9. The largest continent in the world is _____.
10. The United States is in North _____.
11. A sari is a dress worn by many _____ women.
12. Rome is an _____ city.
13. _____ festivals in Mexico are called fiestas.
14. Madrid is a _____ city.
15. *Sputnik I* was a _____ spacecraft, the first to orbit Earth.
16. France and Spain are countries in _____.
17. Origami is the _____ art of folding paper.
18. The two _____ continents are South America and North America.
19. Berlin is a large _____ city.
20. You can go on a desert safari in _____.

## Word Categorization

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

## Use Context Clues

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Connections to WRITING

## Proofread a Newspaper Ad

Proofread the ad below for ten misspelled words. Then rewrite the ad. Write the spelling words correctly and make the corrections shown by the proofreading marks.

**Omniworld Offers It All**

¶ Do you want to sweat in a /jungle in Affrica, shiver in Antartica, visit ≡europ, photograph kangaroos in Austraalia, or explore South Americka? ^We have it all: Greak food, Irrish hospitality, the Chineese Great Wall! Visit or call our ≡canadien or Ammerican offices today ⊙

**Proofreading Marks**

- ≡ Make Uppercase
- / Make Lowercase
- ^ Add
- ⌒ Delete
- ⊙ Add a Period
- ¶ Indent

## Opinion Writing

### Write a Newspaper Ad

Write or type a travel ad to convince readers to visit a place you have visited or would like to visit. Give the name of the travel agency, what it offers, and the suggested prices. Use as many spelling words as you can.

- Use the writing process: prewrite, draft, revise, edit, and publish.
- Use descriptive words in your ad to help the reader visualize the places advertised and why the reader should choose to go there.
- Use complete sentences with correct capitalization, punctuation, grammar, and spelling.
- Read your writing. Circle three words that could be misspelled. Use an electronic spell checker to check the spelling.

**Transfer**

Choose the names of two countries people might like to visit. Next to each country name, write the spelling word that names the people who live in that country.

# Extend & Transfer

# Word Study

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| street | Indian | Irish | Canadian | Texas |
| east | French | Greek | German | Washington |
| earth | Chinese | Russian | Italian | yen |
| west | Mexican | Europe | British | Euro |
| south | Spanish | Japanese | California | peso |
| Africa | America | Australia | Colorado | Australian |
| American | Asia | Antarctica | New York | dollar |

## Meaning Mastery

Complete the chart with the description and currency for each country below. Today, European nations use the Euro as currency.

| Country | People | Currency |
|---|---|---|
| Japan | 1. _____ | 2. _____ |
| Italy | 3. _____ | 4. _____ |
| Mexico | 5. _____ | 6. _____ |
| France | 7. _____ | 8. _____ |
| Germany | 9. _____ | 10. _____ |

## Plurals

**11–23.** Write the spelling words that are proper nouns and have no plural form. If a word has already been used on this page, do not write it again.

Meaning Mastery

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Plurals

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____
21. _____
22. _____
23. _____

# Social Studies

# Word Hunt

Read the paragraphs below and look for the names of continents and nationalities.

There are seven continents. The largest is Asia. About 4 billion people live there. Chinese people, Japanese people, and Russian people live there. So do people of lots of other nationalities.

Russians also live in Europe. Europe is the sixth-largest continent. About one-fifth of the world's people live there. That's very crowded.

Australia is the smallest continent. About 20 million people live there. Antarctica is the fifth-largest continent. No one lives there all the time. It's too cold. About 4,000 researchers go there in the summer. Maybe 1,000 of them stay through the icy cold winters.

India is part of Asia. It is often called the Indian subcontinent. That means it's a large part of a continent. Continents! Subcontinents! It's pretty confusing. Here's another fact: Some 15 million people don't live on any continent! They live in island countries.

Imagine that you had a world of your own. What would it be like?

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## WORD SORT

Write the spelling word that names the nationality of people from each country below.

**1.** Russia **2.** China **3.** India

Write the spelling word that names the continent that each nationality comes from.

**4.** Europeans **5.** Australians **6.** Asians

**7–8.** Write the words that have the /**sh**/ sound.

**9–10.** Write the words that have the suffix **-ese**.

# Unit 36 Assess for Transfer

Unit 31

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Unit 32

5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

Unit 33

9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Unit 34

13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Unit 35

17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

## Units 31–35

### Assessment

Each assessment word in the box fits one of the spelling patterns and rules you have studied over the past five weeks. Read the unit descriptions. Then write each assessment word under the unit number it fits.

### Unit 31

**1–4.** The /**sh**/ sound can be spelled **sh** as in **shelter**. Other ways to spell /**sh**/ appear in these patterns: **tion** (**fiction**), **cian** (**magician**), and **tient** (**patient**). The /**zh**/ sound appears in the **sion** pattern (**division**).

### Unit 32

**5–8.** Add **'s** to show ownership when a noun is singular. Add **s'** to show ownership when a plural noun ends in **-s**. When a plural noun does not end in **-s**, add **'s** to show ownership (**children's**).

### Unit 33

**9–12.** The suffix **-ness** means "a condition or quality": **kindness**. The suffix **-ment** means "the result of an action": **enjoyment**. The base word usually does not change.

### Unit 34

**13–16.** A **compound word** is formed from two or more smaller words. Closed compounds are written as one word. Open compounds are written as two separate words.

### Unit 35

**17–20.** It is important to be able to spell words that name and describe places in our world.

**Words for Assessment**

- shallow
- parents'
- Dutch
- prepayment
- home run
- turtleneck
- cheerfulness
- Korean
- friend's
- action
- decision
- teacher's
- Portuguese
- peacefulness
- meantime
- Cuban
- beautician
- aunt's
- swiftness
- applesauce

# Review

## Unit 31: Consonant Sounds: /sh/, /zh/

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **dictionary** | **fiction** | **abolish** | **division** | **multiplication** |
| **invitation** | **election** | **shadow** | **motion** | **magician** |

Change each base word as needed to add the suffix **-ion, -ian,** or **-ary** to form a spelling word. Circle the spelling for /**sh**/ or /**zh**/ in each word.

1. diction
2. multiply
3. fictitious
4. elect
5. magic
6. mobile
7. divide
8. invite

9. Write the word that begins with /**sh**/.
10. Write the word that ends with /**sh**/.

## Unit 32: Possessives

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **brother's** | **children's** | **fathers'** | **mother's** | **watches'** |
| **fish's** | **sisters'** | **wife's** | **child's** | **sons'** |

Write the spelling word that completes the phrase.

11. the faces of two watches: the _____ faces
12. the eyes of one fish: the _____ eyes
13. the shoes of my sisters: my _____ shoes
14. the name of his wife: his _____ name
15. the interests of my mother: my _____ interests
16. the grades of her brother: her _____ grades
17. the toys of the children: the _____ toys
18. the tricycle of the child: the _____ tricycle
19. the lawn mowers of our fathers: our _____ lawn mowers
20. the paintings of her sons: her _____ paintings

**Unit 31**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

**Unit 32**

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

Unit 36

# Review

## Unit 33: Base Words With Suffixes: -ness, -ment

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **agreement** | **enjoyment** | **kindness** | **thickness** | **stillness** |
| **movement** | **apartment** | **illness** | **sadness** | **darkness** |

Write the spelling word whose base word rhymes with the word below.

1. mind
2. sick
3. smart
4. spark
5. free
6. mad
7. prove
8. employ

Write the spelling word that goes with each base word.

9. ill
10. still

## Unit 34: Compounds

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **basketball** | **everyday** | **everyone** | **sometimes** | **newspaper** |
| **outdoors** | **nearby** | **anywhere** | **whenever** | **upstairs** |

Change one word in each compound word below to form a spelling word.

11. nowhere
12. anyone
13. softball
14. outside
15. paperback
16. evergreen
17. weekday
18. downstairs
19. pastimes
20. near miss

Unit 33

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

Unit 34

11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____

# Unit 35: Words About Our World

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Africa** | **American** | **Chinese** | **Spanish** | **Asia** |
| **Mexican** | **Indian** | **America** | **Irish** | **French** |

Write the word that fits the description.

1. a child born in Ireland
2. a type of food eaten in Mexico
3. the language spoken in China
4. the music and dance of Spain
5. the continent that includes China and Vietnam
6. the continent where Ethiopia and South Africa are
7. a woman born in the United States of America
8. the language spoken in France
9. someone from India
10. South _____, the continent south of North America

**Unit 35**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

## Spelling Study Strategy

### Sorting by Endings

One good way to practice spelling words is to place words into groups according to some spelling pattern.

1. Make six columns across a large piece of paper.
2. Write one of these words, including the underlined parts, at the top of each column: **fiction, division, brother's, fathers', darkness, enjoyment**.
3. Have a partner choose a spelling word from Unit 31, 32, or 33 and say it aloud.
4. Write the spelling word in the column under the word with the same ending.

# Standardized Test Practice

**Directions:** Read each item carefully. Select the best answer and fill in the circle on your answer sheet.

**1. The babysitter was patient with the childs' confusion.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change babysitter to *babysiter*
(B) change patient to *pashent*
(C) change childs' to *child's*
(D) change confusion to *confushun*

**2. The darknes that covered the pavement was lit by the brightness of the flashlight.**

Which word in the sentence is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) darknes
(B) pavement
(C) brightness
(D) flashlight

**3. The high school news paper reported on a student group's trip to Europe.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change high school to *high skool*
(B) change news paper to *newspaper*
(C) change group's to *grewps'*
(D) change Europe to *europe*

**4. The book about a farmer's trip to Antarctica is ficsion.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change farmer's to *farmers'*
(B) change Antarctica to *Antartica*
(C) change ficsion to *fiction*
(D) change ficsion to *ficshun*

**5. The air mail letter in the mailbox was an invitation to visit our Chineze friends in Beijing.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change air mail to *air male*
(B) change mailbox to *malebox*
(C) change invitation to *invitacion*
(D) change Chineze to *Chinese*

**6. The patient thanked the doctor for helping him regain moshion in his shoulder. Then he wrote the doctor a check as payment in full.**

Which word in the sentences is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) patient
(B) moshion
(C) shoulder
(D) payment

**7. Sometimes my fathers' car is parked in the driveway in front of the high school.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change Sometimes to *Sumtimes*
(B) change fathers' to *father's*
(C) change driveway to *drivewaiy*
(D) change high school to *high skool*



GO ON

8. **Our trip across Amerika began in New York and continued west to California.**

Which word in the sentence is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) Amerika
(B) New York
(C) west
(D) California

9. **The news of the company's agreeyment to publish the poet's work was met with an exclamation of joy.**

Which word in the sentence is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) company's
(B) agreeyment
(C) publish
(D) exclamation

10. **To the crowd's enjoyment, the basketball game was held owtdoors on a bright, sunny day.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change crowd's to *crowds'*
(B) change enjoyment to *enjoymint*
(C) change basketball to *baskitball*
(D) change owtdoors to *outdoors*

11. **The American tourists' guidebook for Afrika has more pages than a dictionary.**

Which word in the sentence is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) American
(B) tourists'
(C) Afrika
(D) dictionary

12. **Did I mention that my brother's friend has an apartmint in Washington?**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change mention to *menshon*
(B) change brother's to *brothers'*
(C) change apartmint to *apartment*
(D) change Washington to *Wasington*

13. **Sadness is the emotion I feel wenever I see unfair treatment of people because they seem different from us.**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change Sadness to *Saddness*
(B) change emotion to *emoshon*
(C) change wenever to *whenever*
(D) change treatment to *treetment*

14. **I buy Dad a Fathers' Day present every year. There should be a Sons' Day, too. I think I'll start a movemint to draw attention to my idea.**

Which word in the sentences is spelled **incorrectly**?

(A) Fathers'
(B) Sons'
(C) movemint
(D) attention

15. **Is everyday kindness expected in every Chinese child's world?**

What change should be made to this sentence?

(A) change kindness to *kindnesses*
(B) change Chinese to *chinese's*
(C) change everyday to *every day*
(D) No change

STOP

# Writer's Workshop

Enrichment

## Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics

### Adverbs

An **adverb** that ends in **-ly** usually tells about a verb. It tells how something is done or how often it is done.

The actor walked **quietly** across the stage.

The hare ran **quickly**.

**Slowly** but **surely,** the tortoise won the race.

**Practice Activity**

**A.** Write the adverb in each sentence below.

1. Someone carelessly left a shoe on the floor.
2. Tawana smiled cheerfully at the audience.
3. People are sleeping, so talk softly.
4. George packed his suitcase carefully.
5. With trembling hands, I excitedly opened the huge envelope.

**B.** Which sentences contain adverbs? Write the adverb you see in each sentence. Write **no** if a sentence has no adverb.

6. The audience cheered loudly for both teams.
7. I love staying in this quiet library.
8. Your brother's watch ticks noisily.
9. The door slammed suddenly and startled me.
10. The delicious aroma filled the room completely.

**Practice Activity A**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**Practice Activity B**

6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

# The Writing Process: Opinion

## Writing a Letter to the Editor

### PREWRITING

One way to share your opinions about current events is to write a letter to the editor of a newspaper. Think about an article you have read. Why did you agree or disagree with the information presented? Be sure to research and organize your response with facts to support your opinion. As you think about your letter, make an outline of the facts you learn.

### DRAFTING

Use your outline to write a letter to the editor. Begin with a topic sentence that presents the main idea. Follow your outline as you write supporting sentences. Use as many spelling words as possible. If you don't know how to spell a word, make your best guess. You will be able to revise your letter later.

### REVISING

When you have finished your first draft, read your letter from beginning to end. Check to see if you have included all of the points in your outline. Does each sentence support the topic? Now use a word processor to key your final draft.

### EDITING

Use the **Editing Checklist** to proofread your letter to the editor. Circle three words that may be misspelled. Use an electronic resource to check the spelling.

### PUBLISHING

Make a copy of your letter and share it with your readers. Have an adult help you mail it to the editor of a newspaper.

### EDITING CHECKLIST

**Spelling**

- ✓ Circle words that contain the spelling patterns and rules learned in Units 31–35.
- ✓ Check the circled words in your **Spelling Dictionary**.
- ✓ Check for other spelling errors.

**Capital Letters**

- ✓ Capitalize important words in the title.
- ✓ Capitalize the first word in each sentence.
- ✓ Capitalize proper nouns.

**Punctuation**

- ✓ End each sentence with the correct punctuation.
- ✓ Use commas, apostrophes, and quotation marks correctly.

**Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics**

- ✓ Use adverbs that end in **-ly** correctly to tell about verbs.

# Spelling and the Writing Process

Writing anything—a friendly letter, a paper for school—usually follows a process. The writing process has five steps. It might look like this if you tried to draw a picture of it:

Part of the writing process forms a loop. That is because not every writing task is the same. It is also because writers often jump back and forth between the steps as they change their minds and think of new ideas.

Here is a description of each step:

**PREWRITING** This is thinking and planning ahead to help you write.

**DRAFTING** This means writing your paper for the first time. You usually just try to get your ideas down on paper. You should spell correctly those words that you do know. Attempt to spell those that you don't. You can fix them later.

**REVISING** This means fixing your final draft. During this step, you rewrite, change, and add words.

**EDITING** You are ready to edit when you feel you have said all you want to say. Proofread your paper for errors in spelling, grammar, and punctuation. Be sure to use a print or online dictionary to check your spelling.

**PUBLISHING** This is making a copy of your writing and sharing it with your readers. Put your writing in a form that your readers will enjoy.

Confident spellers are better writers. Confident writers understand their own writing process better. Know how the five steps best fit the way you write.

# Spelling and Writing Ideas

Being a good speller can help make you a more confident writer. Writing often can make you a better writer. Here are some ideas to get you started.

## Narrative writing tells a story about real or imaginary events.

**You might...**

- write a story about your first visit to someplace new.
- pretend to be a famous American and write a journal or diary entry as that person.
- write a friendly letter to your best friend.
- write a mystery story. Use an empty mansion as the setting for the events.

## Opinion writing states an opinion and supports it with reasons and details.

**You might...**

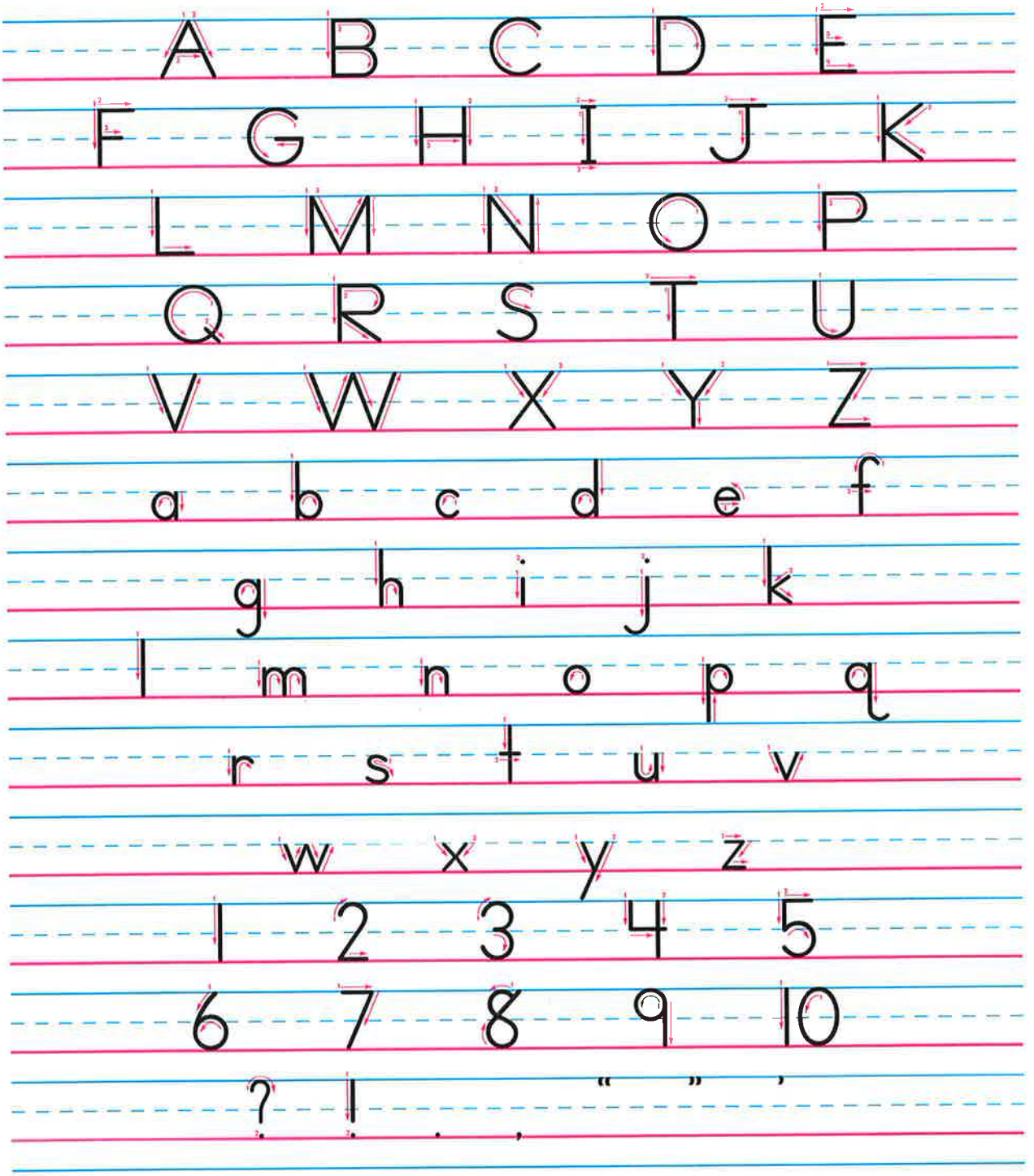
- try to convince your parents to get an exotic pet, such as a snake or a ferret.
- try to convince your mayor to change a town law.
- try to convince your classmates that reading a digital book is better than reading a paper book.
- tell what your favorite television program is and explain why.

## Informative/Explanatory writing tells about a topic, a relationship, or a process.

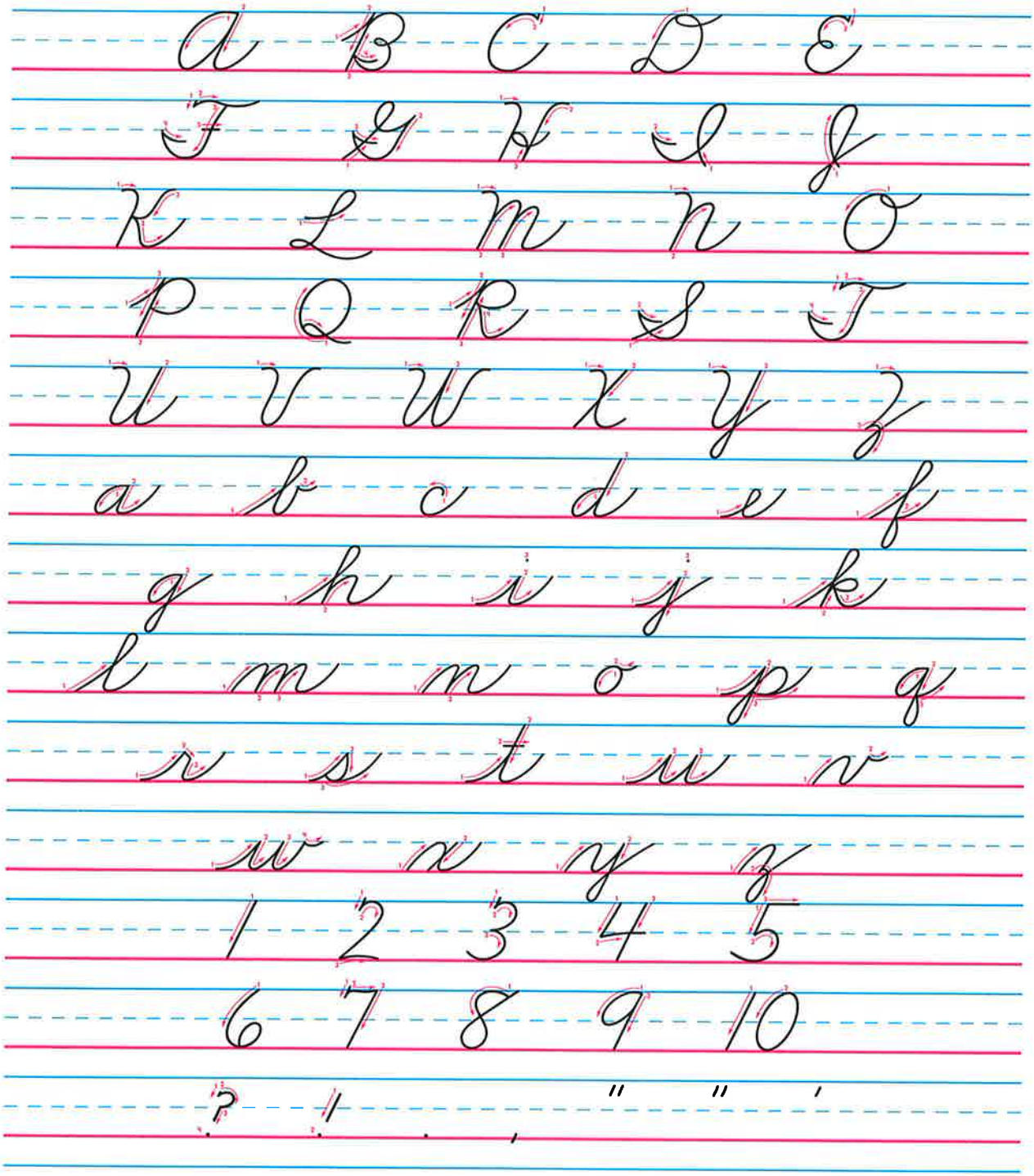
**You might...**

- write a report about the causes and effects of erosion.
- use the Internet to research and write a report about healthy eating habits.
- write a clear and detailed explanation of how to plan for a vacation.
- describe a national monument you've seen.

# Manuscript Handwriting Models



# Cursive Handwriting Models



# High Frequency Writing Words

## A

a
about
afraid
after
again
air
all
almost
also
always
am
America
an
and
animal
animals
another
any
anything
are
around
as
ask
asked
at
ate
away

## B

baby
back
bad
ball
balloons
baseball
basketball
be
bear
beautiful
because
become
bed
been
before
being
believe
best
better
big
bike
black
boat
book
books
both
boy
boys
bring
broke
brother
build
bus
but
buy
by

## C

call
called
came
can
candy
can't
car
care
cars
cat
catch
caught
change
charge
children
Christmas
circus
city
class
clean
clothes
come
comes
coming
could
couldn't
country
cut

## D

Dad
day
days
decided
did
didn't
died
different
dinner
do
does
doesn't
dog
dogs
doing
done
don't
door
down
dream

## E

each
earth
eat
eighth
else
end
enough
even
every
everybody
everyone
everything
except
eyes

## F

family
fast
father
favorite
feel
feet
fell
few
field
fight
finally
find
fire
first
fish
five
fix
food
football
for
found
four
free
Friday
friend
friends
from
front
fun
funny
future

## G

game
games
gas
gave
get
gets
getting
girl
girls
give
go
God
goes
going

good
got
grade
grader
great
ground
grow

## H

had
hair
half
happened
happy
hard
has
have
having
he
head
heard
help
her
here
he's
high
hill
him
his
hit
home
homework
hope
horse
horses
hot
hour
house
how
hurt

## I

I
I'd
if
I'm
important
in
into
is
it
its
it's

## J

job
jump
just

## K

keep
kept
kids
killed
kind
knew
know

## L

lady
land
last
later
learn
leave
left
let
let's
life
like
liked
likes
little
live
lived
lives
long
look
looked
looking
lost
lot
lots
love
lunch

## M

mad
made
make
making
man
many
math
may
maybe
me
mean
men
might
miss
Mom
money
more
morning
most
mother
mouse
move
Mr.
Mrs.
much
music
must
my
myself

## N

name
named
need
never
new
next
nice
night
no
not
nothing
now

## O

of
off
oh
OK
old
on
once
one
only
or
other
our
out
outside
over
own

## P

parents
park
party
people
person
pick
place
planet
play
played
playing
police
president
pretty
probably
problem
put

## R

ran
read
ready
real
really
reason
red
responsibilities

# High Frequency Writing Words
continued

rest
ride
riding
right
room
rules
run
running

## S

said
same
saw
say
scared
school
schools
sea
second
see
seen
set
seventh
she
ship
shot
should
show
sick
since
sister
sit
sleep
small
snow
so
some
someone
something
sometimes
soon
space
sport
sports
start
started
states
stay
still
stop
stopped
store
story
street
stuff
such
sudden
suddenly
summer
sure
swimming

## T

take
talk
talking
teach
teacher
teachers
team
tell
than
Thanksgiving
that
that's
the
their
them
then
there
these
they
they're
thing
things
think
this
thought
three
through
throw
time
times
to
today
together
told
too
took
top
tree
trees
tried
trip
trouble
try
trying
turn
turned
TV
two

## U

united
until
up
upon
us
use
used

## V

very

## W

walk
walked
walking
want
wanted
war
was
wasn't
watch
water
way
we
week
weeks
well
went
were
what
when
where
which
while
white
who
whole
why
will
win
winter
wish
with
without
woke
won
won't
work
world
would
wouldn't

## Y

yard
year
years
yes
you
your
you're

# Using the Dictionary

## Guide Words

The **guide words** at the top of each dictionary page can help you find the word you want quickly. The first guide word tells you the first word on that page. The second guide word tells you the last word on that page. The entries on the page fall in alphabetical order between these two guide words.

## Entries

Words you want to check in the dictionary are called **entries**. Entries provide a lot of information besides the correct spelling. Look at the sample entry below.

## Tips for Finding a Word in a Dictionary

- Practice using guide words in a dictionary. Think of words to spell. Then use the guide words to find each word's entry. Do this again and again until you can use guide words easily.
- Some spellings are listed with the base word. To find **easiest,** you would look up **easy**. To find **remaining,** you would look up **remain**. To find **histories,** you would look up **history**.
- If you do not know how to spell a word, guess the spelling before looking it up. Try to find the first three letters of the word. (If you use just the first letter, it will probably take too long to find the word.)
- If you can't find a word, think of how else it might be spelled. For example, if a word starts with the **/k/** sound, the spelling might begin with **k, c,** or even **ch**.

**entry** the correct spelling, sometimes broken into syllables

**pronunciation**

**other spellings** other word forms, including plurals, that change the spelling of the base word

**po•ny** /**pō′** nē/ *n.* (**po•nies** *pl.*) a kind of horse that is small in size when fully grown. *Children ride a pony at an amusement park.*

**definition** to be sure you have the correct entry word

**sample sentence** to make the definition clearer

# A

**-able** or **-ible** a Latin suffix that means "capable of": *arguable.*

**a•ble** /ā′ bəl/ *adj.* having power, skill, or talent. *With practice you will be able to play the piano.*

**a•bol•ish** /ə **bŏl′** ĭsh/ *v.* to put an end to. *The speaker urged us to abolish poverty.* [Latin *abolescere* die out]

**a•bout** /ə **bout′**/ *adv.* somewhere near. *She guessed it was about seven o'clock.*

**ac•tor** /**ăk′** tər/ *n.* a person who acts on the stage, in motion pictures, on radio, or on television. *A good actor can make people laugh or cry.*

**ad•di•tion**[1] /ə **dĭsh′** ən/ *n.* the adding of one number to another to get a total. *2 + 2 = 4 is an example of addition.*

**ad•di•tion**[2] /ə **dĭsh′** ən/ *adj.* having to do with adding numbers: *an addition problem.*

**Af•ri•ca** /**ăf′** rĭ kə/ *n.* a large continent that lies south of Europe. *The explorer visited jungles and deserts in Africa.*

**age** /āj/ *n.* number of years old. *The baby's age is now two years.*

**a•gree** /ə **grē′**/ *v.* to have the same opinion. *We all agree that Mr. Jansen would make a good mayor.*

**a•gree•ment** /ə **grē′** mənt/ *n.* an arrangement or understanding between two persons or groups. *The students came to an agreement about the best day for the litter cleanup.*

**a•head** /ə **hĕd′**/ *adv.* in advance; in front. *Dad walked ahead to look for a campsite.*

**aim** /ām/ *v.* to point at; to direct toward. *Aim the arrow at the center of the target.*

**air•less** /**âr′** lĭs/ *adj.* having no air. *They sealed the important document in airless packaging.*

**air mail** /**âr′** māl′/ *n.* mail carried by airplanes. *The air mail is placed in special bags.*

**a•larm** /ə **lärm′**/ *n.* a warning signal that danger is near. *The alarm went off moments after the fire started.*

**a•larm clock** /ə **lärm′** klŏk′/ *n.* a clock that can be set to ring or buzz at a certain time. *My alarm clock wakes me up at seven every morning.*

**a•live** /ə **līv′**/ *adj.* living; not dead. *People sometimes forget that trees are alive.*

**al•li•ga•tor** /**ăl′** ĭ gā′ tər/ *n.* a large reptile with a narrow body, short legs, long tail, and thick skin. *Alligators live in warm, swampy areas.* [Spanish *el lagarto,* the lizard.]

**al•low•ance** /ə **lou′** əns/ *n.* a definite amount of money given regularly for spending. *Chang is saving his allowance to buy a basketball.*

**a•lone** /ə **lōn′**/ *adv.* without anyone else. *The box was too heavy for one person to lift alone. adj.* apart from others. *I am alone.*

**al•ready** /**ôl rĕd′** ē/ *adv.* by this time; before. *We stopped to visit, but they had already left.*

**al•so** /**ôl′** sō/ *adv.* too; in addition; likewise. *Geraniums grow well not only in flowerpots, but also in gardens.*

**A•mer•i•ca** /ə **mĕr′** ĭ kə/ *n.* the continents of the western hemisphere; North and South America. *The United States of America is often called America.*

**A•mer•i•can**[1] /ə **mĕr′** ĭ kən/ *n.* one born or living in America. *A citizen of the United States is an American.*

**A•mer•i•can**[2] /ə **mĕr′** ĭ kən/ *adj.* of or from the United States. *The American flag is red, white, and blue.*

**a•mount** /ə **mount′**/ *n.* the total or sum. *We raised the amount of money needed for the books.*

**a•muse** /ə **myōōz′**/ *v.* **a.** to entertain. *Parents can amuse their children by reading them stories.* **b.** to cause to laugh or smile. *The monkey's antics amused the passers-by.*

**-an** a Latin suffix that means "of, relating to, or resembling": *Mexican.*

**an•chor** /**ăng′** kər/ *n.* a heavy object that keeps boats from drifting away. *We lowered the anchor so our boat wouldn't drift overnight.*

anchor

**an•gle** /ăng′ gəl/ *n.* the figure formed by two lines that come together in a point. *The teacher drew an angle on the chalkboard.*

**an•kle** /ăng′ kəl/ *n.* the joint connecting the foot with the leg. *My new sneakers are high enough to cover my ankles.*

**an•swer** /ăn′ sər/ *n.* **a.** a reply. *I must send my answer to her letter quickly.* **b.** a solution. *I know the answer to that math problem.*

**Ant•arc•ti•ca** /ănt ärk′ tĭ kə/ *n.* the continent at the South Pole. *The coldest continent on the earth is Antarctica.*

**an•te•lope** /ăn′ tl ōp′/ *n.* (**an•te•lope** or **an•te•lopes** *pl.*) an animal with horns that face upward and backward. *While we were in Montana, we saw an antelope roaming.*

**an•y•bod•y** /ĕn′ ē bŏd ē/ or /ĕn′ ē bŭd ē/ *pron.* any person. *Did you see anybody that I know at the meeting?*

**an•y•thing** /ĕn′ ē thĭng′/ *pron.* any thing; something. *We couldn't find anything for Grandma's birthday.*

**an•y•way** /ĕn′ ē wā/ *adv.* no matter what may happen; anyhow. *It may rain tomorrow, but we are going to have the picnic anyway.*

**an•y•where** /ĕn′ ē hwâr′/ *adv.* at or to any place. *If you're going anywhere near a hardware store, bring me some nails.*

**a•part** /ə pärt′/ *adv.* to pieces; in separate pieces. *The puzzle fell apart when it slipped off the table.*

**a•part•ment** /ə pärt′ mənt/ *n.* a group of rooms to live in, generally in a building housing more than one family. *They live in an apartment on the second floor.*

**a•pol•o•gy** /ə pŏl′ ə jē/ *n.* (**a•pol•o•gies** *pl.*) words saying one is sorry; asking pardon. *Please accept my apology for coming so late; I was delayed by heavy traffic.*

**ap•pear** /ə pîr′/ *v.* **a.** to show up; to be seen. *He appeared for breakfast promptly at seven o'clock.* **b.** to seem; to give an appearance. *She appeared to like the suggestion.*

**Apr.** April.

**A•pril** /ā′ prəl/ *n.* the fourth month of the year. *We should have some warmer weather in April.*

**a•quar•i•um** /ə kwâr′ ē əm/ *n.* (**a•quar•i•ums** or **a•quar•i•a** *pl.*) a tank or bowl in which fish, water animals, or water plants are kept. *Jordan bought live plants for his aquarium.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circus |

**arch** /ärch/ *n.* (**arch•es** *pl.*) **a.** a curved opening or structure that looks like an upside-down **U**. *The arch in the window is a design feature.* **b.** the curved section of the foot. *The arch of the foot is formed by a band of tissue that connects the heel bone to the toes.*

**ar•gue** /är′ gyo͞o/ *v.* (**ar•gues, ar•gued, ar•gu•ing**) **a.** to disagree; to dispute; to quarrel. *Tanya often argues with Michael.* **b.** to give reasons for or against. *The lawyer argued her case effectively.* (**ar•gu•a•ble** *adj.*)

**ar•gu•ment** /är′ gyə mənt/ *n.* **a.** a quarrel or disagreement. *Rob had an argument with his coach.* **b.** a statement that is supposed to prove a point. *Carmen's last argument was the most convincing.*

**ar•my** /är′ mē/ *n.* (**ar•mies** *pl.*) a large body of people organized and trained for warfare or a task. *There was an army of teachers to help with the science fair.*

**ar•rive** /ə rīv′/ *v.* (**ar•rives, ar•rived, ar•riv•ing**) **a.** to come to a particular place; to reach a destination. *When will you arrive at the airport?* **b.** to come. *The big day finally arrived.*

**art•ist** /är′ tĭst/ *n.* **a.** a person who is skilled in any of the fine arts, especially painting or music. *Picasso was a great artist.* **b.** any skillful or creative person. *A gourmet cook is an artist in the kitchen.*

**A•sia** /ā′ zhə/ *n.* the large continent that lies east of Europe. *The largest continent on Earth is Asia.*

**at•ten•tion** /ə **tĕn′** shən/ *n.* **a.** staying alert to what is happening. *Always pay attention in class.* **b.** thoughtfulness; consideration. *Rhonda gives her grandparents a lot of attention.*

**auc•tion** /**ôk′** shən/ *n.* a public sale at which property is sold to the highest bidder. *Mrs. Evans bought an antique vase at the auction.*

**au•di•ence** /**ô′** dē əns/ *n.* **a.** a number of people who come together to see or hear something: *the audience in the theater.* **b.** all of the persons who can see or hear something: *television audience.* [Latin *audire,* to hear.]

**au•di•o**[1] /**ô′** dē ō′/ *adj.* relating to sound. *Because of a problem with the audio equipment, we missed the last song.*

**au•di•o**[2] /**ô′** dē ō′/ *n.* (**au•di•os** *pl.*) the sending, copying, or receiving of sounds. *The new speakers improved the audio of my stereo.*

**Aug.** August.

**Au•gust** /**ô′** gəst/ *n.* the eighth month of the year. *August has thirty-one days.*

**Aus•tra•lia** /ô **strāl′** yə/ *n.* (**Aus•tra•li•an** *n.*) the island continent between the Pacific and Indian oceans. *At the zoo we saw a kangaroo from Australia.*

**au•thor** /**ô′** thər/ *n.* the writer of a book, story, article, etc.; a writer. *The author sent us a copy of her book.*

**av•er•age** /**ăv′** ər ĭj/ or /**ăv′** rĭj/ *adj.* common; ordinary; usual. *Today was just an average day; nothing exciting happened.*

**a•void** /ə **void′**/ *v.* to stay away from; to keep from meeting. *I avoided him when he had the measles.*

**a•ware** /ə **wâr′**/ *adj.* alert to; knowing; conscious of. *Are you aware that you are late to school?*

**a•way** /ə **wā′**/ *adv.* **a.** from a place; to a different place. *Our dog ran away last week.* **b.** aside; out of the way. *He put the dishes away after supper.*

**aw•ful** /**ô′** fəl/ *adj.* very bad; very ugly; unpleasant. *That was an awful movie.*

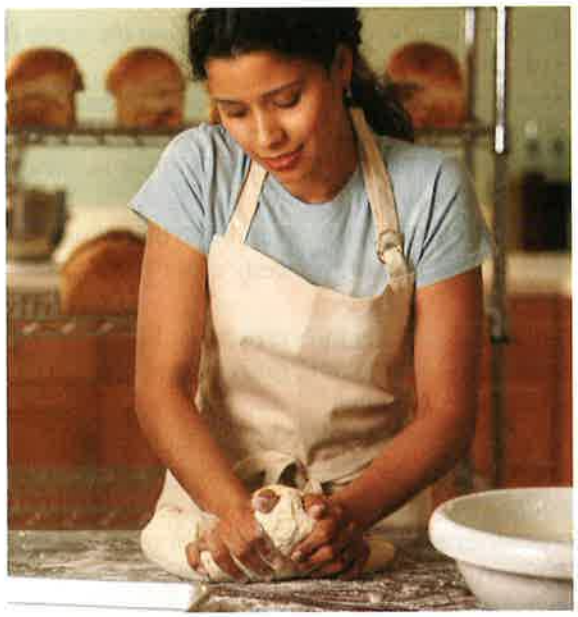
**a•while** /ə **hwīl′**/ *adv.* for a short time. *Let's rest awhile before we continue driving.*

**ba•by•sit•ter** /**bā′** bē sĭt′ ər/ *n.* one who takes care of young children. *John's mother called a babysitter to stay with him while she was out.*

**badge** /băj/ *n.* something worn to show that a person is a member of a group or organization. *Each firefighter wore a badge.*

**bag•gage** /**băg′** ĭj/ *n.* suitcases; luggage. *Airline passengers may pick up their baggage inside the terminal.*

**bak•er** /**bā′** kər/ *n.* a person who makes and sells breads and pastries. *We ordered a special birthday cake from the baker.*



**baker**

**bal•loon** /bə **lōōn′**/ *n.* a brightly colored rubber bag that can be filled with air or gas and used as a toy. *Can you blow up this balloon?*

**ban•jo** /**băn′** jō/ *n.* (**ban•jos** or **ban•joes** *pl.*) a musical instrument with a drumlike body, a long neck, and usually, four or five strings which may be plucked or strummed. *A banjo is similar to a guitar.*

**bank•er** /**băng′** kər/ *n.* a person who owns or runs a bank. *We talked to the banker about opening a savings account.*

**bar•ber** /**bär′** bər/ *n.* a person who cuts and trims hair. *My brother went to the barber to get his hair cut today.*

**bare** /bâr/ *adj.* **a.** not wearing clothes; not covered. *Should you be walking outside in your bare feet?* **b.** without a covering. *The floor is bare because the rug is being cleaned.*

➤ **Bare** sounds like **bear**.

**bas•ket•ball** /**băs′** kĭt bôl′/ *n.* **a.** a game in which points are scored by throwing a ball through a basket. *Basketball is usually played indoors.* **b.** the ball used in this game. *Our basketball had lost all its air.*

**bat•tle** /**băt′** l/ *n.* a fight between armies, navies, etc., during a war. *That battle was the turning point of the war.*

**beat•en** /**bēt′** n/ *v.* (**beats, beat, beat•en, beat•ing**) mixed rapidly with a utensil. *The eggs were beaten for the recipe.*

**beau•ti•ful** /**byo͞o′** tə fəl/ *adj.* having beauty; pleasing to the eye, ear, or mind; lovely: *a beautiful painting.*

**beau•ty** /**byo͞o′** tē/ *n.* (**beau•ties** *pl.*) the quality that makes a person or thing pleasing to the senses. *The beauty of the music made us forget everything else.*

**be•came** /bĭ **kām′**/ *v.* past tense of **become**.

**be•cause** /bĭ **kôz′**/ *conj.* for the reason that. *I study because I want to learn.*

**be•come** /bĭ **kŭm′**/ *v.* (**be•comes, be•came, be•come, be•com•ing**) to come to be. *The weather will become warmer in spring.*

**be•fore** /bĭ **fôr′**/ *prep.* at an earlier time than. *I had to be home before six o'clock.*

**be•gan** /bĭ **găn′**/ *v.* past tense of **begin**.

**be•gin** /bĭ **gĭn′**/ *v.* (**be•gins, be•gan, be•gun, be•gin•ning**) to start. *We will begin our school day with a math lesson.*

**be•gun** /bĭ **gŭn′**/ *v.* past participle of **begin**; started. *We waited to be seated because the play had already begun.*

**be•lief** /bĭ **lēf′**/ *n.* something accepted as true. *It was a common belief that Earth was flat.*

**beliefs** /bĭ **lēfs′**/ *n.* plural of **belief**.

**be•lieve** /bĭ **lēv′**/ *v.* (**be•lieves, be•lieved, be•liev•ing**) to accept something as true or real. *Do you believe that cats have nine lives?*

**be•low** /bĭ **lō′**/ *prep.* in a lower place than; to a lower place than. *Kansas is below Nebraska on the map.*

**be•neath** /bĭ **nēth′**/ *prep.* under; lower than. *I sat beneath the tree.*

**be•ret** /bə **rā′**/ *n.* a round, soft, flat cap of wool or felt. *She wore her beret tilted at a jaunty angle.* [French *béret.*]

**be•side** /bĭ **sīd′**/ *prep.* at the side of; near to. *The carton was left beside the trash can.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | **i**tem, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**be•tween** /bĭ **twēn′**/ *prep.* in the space that separates two things. *There were four people between me and the door.*

**bev•er•age** /**bĕv′** ər ĭj/ or /**bĕv′** rĭj/ *n.* something to drink. *Does a beverage come with our meal?*

**be•ware** /bĭ **wâr′**/ *v.* to be cautious of. *Beware of the undertow when you swim in the ocean.*

**bi•cy•cle**[1] /**bī′** sĭk′ əl/ or /-sĭ kəl/ *n.* a vehicle having two wheels mounted on a light metal frame with a seat for the rider, a bar for steering, and pedals turned by the feet. *Riding a bicycle requires a good sense of balance.*

**bi•cy•cle**[2] /**bī′** sĭk′ əl/ or /-sĭ kəl/ or /**-sī′** kəl/ *v.* (**bi•cy•cles, bi•cy•cled, bi•cy•cling**) to ride or travel by bicycle. *How far can you bicycle?*

**bi•month•ly** /bī **mŭnth′** lē/ *adj.* **a.** occurring once every two months: *a bimonthly magazine.* **b.** occurring twice a month: *bimonthly meetings.*

**bis•cuit** /**bĭs′** kĭt/ *n.* a type of bread that is often hard and crisp. *Would you like toast or a biscuit with your tea?*

**bit•ter** /**bĭt′** ər/ *adj.* tasting sharp and unpleasant. *Do you think black walnuts have a bitter taste?*

**bi•week•ly** /bī **wēk′** lē/ *adj.* **a.** occurring once every two weeks: *a biweekly paycheck.* **b.** occurring twice a week: *biweekly classes.*

**black•en** /**blăk′** ən/ *v.* to make black or dark. *Use a pencil to blacken the circle that matches the correct answer.*

**blame**[1] /blām/ *v.* (**blames, blamed, blam•ing**) to put the responsibility for something bad on a person or thing. *Don't blame yourself; it wasn't your fault.*

**blame**[2] /blām/ *n.* responsibility for a fault. *The pilot put the blame for the delay on the fog.*

**blan•ket** /**blăng'** kĭt/ *n.* a heavy woven piece of cloth used to keep one warm. *I sleep under a wool blanket in the winter.*

**blight** /blīt/ *n.* a disease or injury to plants. *The blight killed our crop last year.*

**blue•ber•ry** /**blo͞o'** bĕr' ē/ *n.* (**blue•ber•ries** *pl.*) the edible blue or blackish berry of any of several plants of the heath family. *A blueberry is a type of fruit.*

**blu•est** /**blo͞o'** ĭst/ *adj.* (**blue, blu•er**) the superlative form of **blue**. being of the truest shade of blue. *Her eyes are the bluest I have ever seen.*

**blush** /blŭsh/ *v.* to become red in the face. *Your flattery makes me blush.*

**boast** /bōst/ *v.* to brag; to talk too much about yourself and about what you can do. *Judy likes to boast about how fast she can run.*

**boast•ful** /**bōst'** fəl/ *adj.* liking to brag. *It is better to be humble than it is to be boastful.*

**boil** /boil/ *v.* **a.** to bubble and send out steam. *When water is heated enough, it boils.* **b.** to heat a liquid until bubbles rise. *He boiled the soup.* **c.** to cook in boiling water. *My mother boiled eggs for breakfast.*

**bold** /bōld/ *adj.* not afraid to face danger; brave and daring. *The bold gymnast attempted a difficult vault.* (**bold•ly** *adv.*)

**bold•ness** /**bōld'** nĭs/ *n.* the state of being bold; bravery; daring. *We were surprised by the boldness of the fawn in leaving its safe hiding place.*

**bo•nus** /**bō'** nəs/ *n.* (**bo•nus•es** *pl.*) something given in addition to what is usual or expected. *Students who read extra books were given a bonus.*

**both•er** /**bŏth'** ər/ *v.* to give trouble to. *Don't bother me while I am writing.*

**bot•tle**[1] /**bŏt'** l/ *n.* a holder for liquids. *I think juice tastes better from a glass bottle than from a can.*

**bot•tle**[2] /**bŏt'** l/ *v.* (**bot•tles, bot•tled, bot•tling**) to put into bottles. *Milk must be bottled under very clean conditions.* —***idiom.*** **bottle up**. to remain quiet and restrained.

**bought** /bôt/ *v.* past tense of **buy**.

**boun•ti•ful** /**boun'** tə fəl/ *adj.* given or provided abundantly. *Our Thanksgiving meal was quite bountiful.*

**bowl** /bōl/ *n.* a round, deep dish. *Soup is usually served in a bowl.*

**brag** /brăg/ *v.* (**brags, bragged, brag•ging**) to boast; to talk too much about how good you are or how much you have. *Charles often brags about his new radio.*

**brain** /brān/ *n.* the mass of nerve tissue in the skull that controls the body and stores knowledge. *Your brain constantly tells your heart to beat.*

**brake** /brāk/ *n.* a thing that slows down or stops a car, a machine, a bicycle, etc. *The driver pressed on the brake when the traffic light turned red.*

➤ **Brake** sounds like **break**.

**bread** /brĕd/ *n.* a food baked from dough made with flour or meal. *Sandwiches are made with bread.*

**break** /brāk/ *v.* (**breaks, broke, bro•ken, break•ing**) to come apart; to separate into pieces. *The dish will break if it falls on the floor.*

➤ **Break** sounds like **brake**.

**break•fast** /**brĕk'** fəst/ *n.* the first meal of the day. *Jim ate a good breakfast of orange juice, cereal, toast, and milk.*

**breakfast**

**breed** /brēd/ *n.* a group of related animals or plants with visibly similar characteristics. *Our dog is of pure breed; he is one hundred percent Labrador.*

**breeze** /brēz/ *n.* a light, gentle wind. *The flag barely moved in the breeze.*

**brick** /brĭk/ *n.* a block of baked clay used for building or paving. *Many houses and apartment buildings are built with bricks.*

**bridge** /brĭj/ *n.* a structure built over a river or a valley for people or vehicles to cross. *Thousands of cars cross the Golden Gate Bridge every day.*

**brief** /brēf/ *adj.* short; quick; direct. *Our meeting was brief.*

**bright•en** /**brīt'** ən/ *v.* to lighten; to make or become bright. *The lamp will brighten the living room.*

**bright•ness** /**brīt'** nĭs/ *n.* the state or quality of shining or giving light. *The moon's brightness made it easy to see at night.*

**bring** /brĭng/ *v.* (**brings, brought, bring•ing**) to take along. *Be sure to bring a gift to our party.*

**Brit•ain** /**brĭt'** ən/ *n.* the country that includes England, Scotland, and Wales. *Britain is separated from the rest of Europe by the English Channel.*

**Brit•ish**[1] /**brĭt'** ĭsh/ *adj.* of or from Britain. *British woolens are famous for their fine quality.*

**Brit•ish**[2] /**brĭt'** ĭsh/ *n.* the people of Britain. *The British drive on the left side of the road.*

**brit•tle** /**brĭt'** l/ *adj.* (**brit•tler, brit•tlest**) easily broken, cracked, or snapped. *Leaves are very brittle in the autumn.*

**broth•er** /**brŭth'** ər/ *n.* a boy or man having the same parents as another person. *The girl had three older brothers and one younger sister.*

**brought** /brôt/ *v.* past tense of **bring**.

**bub•ble**[1] /**bŭb'** əl/ *n.* a thin, round film of liquid that forms a ball around a pocket of gas or air. *The slightest touch can pop a bubble.*

**bub•ble**[2] /**bŭb'** əl/ *v.* (**bub•bles, bub•bled, bub•bling**) to form bubbles. *The soup will bubble when it is hot.*

**build** /bĭld/ *v.* (**builds, built, build•ing**) to make; to put together. *Doug wants to build a model house out of toothpicks.*

**build•er** /**bĭl'** dər/ *n.* a person whose business is putting up buildings. *My uncle is a builder working on the new school buildings.*

**built** /bĭlt/ *v.* past tense of **build**.

**buoy•ant** /**boi'** ənt/ or /**bōō'** yənt/ *adj.* capable of floating. *You should wear a life jacket because it is buoyant; it will help you float.*

**bur•den** /**bûr'** dn/ *n.* something that is carried; a load. *Carrying all of these books to school every day is a burden on my back.*

**burnt** /bûrnt/ *v.* (**burns, burned** or **burnt, burning**) was on fire; affected by or as if by fire; blazed. *I burnt my hand on the hot stove.*

**burst** /bûrst/ *v.* (**bursts, burst, burst•ing**) to break open suddenly. *The balloon will burst if it touches the hot light.* —***idiom.*** **burst a bubble**. to correct an innocent falsehood.

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**but•ton**[1] /**bŭt'** n/ *n.* a small, flat, hard, round piece used to fasten two parts of a garment by fitting through a slit. *The top button on my coat is loose.*

**but•ton**[2] /**bŭt'** n/ *v.* to fasten with buttons. *I buttoned my shirt.*

**buy** /bī/ *v.* (**buys, bought, buy•ing**) to purchase. *Sally needs to buy a new pair of shoes before winter.*

**cab•bage** /**kăb'** ĭj/ *n.* a vegetable with thick leaves growing tightly together in a solid ball. *Cabbage can be eaten raw or cooked.*

**cal•en•dar** /**kăl'** ən dər/ *n.* a table or chart used to keep track of days, weeks, and months. *We must remember to change our classroom calendar on the first day of the month.*

**calf** /kăf/ *n.* (**calves** *pl.*) a young cow or bull. *A calf can walk soon after it is born.*

**Cal•i•for•nia** /kăl' ə **fôr'** nyə/ or /**-fôr'** nē ə/ *n.* a state in the southwestern United States. *California borders on the Pacific Ocean; its capital is Sacramento.*

**calm** /käm/ *adj.* quiet; peaceful; motionless. *There wasn't even a breeze on that calm evening.*

**calm•est** /**käm'** əst/ *adj.* (**calm, calmer**) quietest, most peaceful, or most motionless. *The baby was calmest when her mother held her.*

**cam•er•a** /**kăm'** ər ə/ or /**kăm'** rə/ *n.* a machine for taking photographs or motion pictures. *Is there film in your camera?*

**camp•er** /kăm′ pər/ *n.* **a.** a person who lives outdoors for a period of time, usually in a tent. *The campers pitched their tent next to a stream.* **b.** a van or trailer equipped for camping. *The family moved into the camper as the storm approached.*

**Can•a•da** /kăn′ ə də/ *n.* the country north of the United States. *Canada is larger than the United States, but it has fewer people.*

**Ca•na•di•an**[1] /kə nā′ dē ən/ *adj.* of or from Canada. *Many U.S. hockey teams have Canadian players.*

**Ca•na•di•an**[2] /kə nā′ dē ən/ *n.* one born or living in Canada. *Many Canadian people speak French.*

**cap•i•tal** /kăp′ ĭ tl/ *n.* **a.** the city or town where the government of a country or a state is located. *Washington, D.C., is the capital of the United States.* **b.** an uppercase letter in writing or printing. *You begin a sentence with a capital.*

➤ **Capital** sounds like **capitol**.

**cap•i•tal•i•za•tion** /kăp′ ĭ tl ĭ zā′ shən/ *n.* the process of writing or printing in capital letters. *Do you know the rules of punctuation and capitalization?*

**cap•i•tol** /kăp′ ĭ tl/ *n.* a building in which the representatives and senators of a state or country meet. *A committee of senators and representatives met in the capitol to discuss the tax plan.*

➤ **Capitol** sounds like **capital**.

**ca•reer** /kə rîr′/ *n.* a profession; a chosen occupation. *She hopes to pursue a career in marine biology.*

**care•ful** /kâr′ fəl/ *adj.* cautious; full of care. *Be careful when you cross the busy street.*

**care•less** /kâr′ lĭs/ *adj.* reckless; not cautious. *You can't afford to be careless with matches.*

**car•pet** /kär′ pĭt/ *n.* a thick, heavy fabric for covering a floor. *I have a new carpet in my room.*

**cart** /kärt/ *n.* **a.** a two-wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse or other animal. *The pony pulled a cart in the parade.* **b.** a small vehicle moved by hand. *I will push the grocery cart.*

**case** /kās/ *n.* a large box; a container. *The music teacher carries her violin in a case.*

**catch** /kăch/ *or* /kĕch/ *v.* (**catch•es, caught, catch•ing**) **a.** to capture. *I can catch the kitten before it runs outside.* **b.** to reach in time. *We can catch the train at the next stop.*



**catch•er** /kăch′ ər/ *n.* one who catches, especially the player behind home plate in a baseball game. *The catcher can tell the pitcher which pitch to throw.*

**cat•fish** /kăt′ fĭsh′/ *n.* (**cat•fish** or **cat•fish•es** *pl.*) a fish that has long whiskerlike feelers around its mouth. *We caught a catfish in the lake in the park.*

**cat•tle** /kăt′ l/ *n.* cows, bulls, or oxen. *The cattle eat grass in the pasture.*

**cattle**

**caught** /kôt/ *v.* past tense of **catch**.

**cau•tion** /kô′ shən/ *n.* careful attention to avoid risk or danger. *Everyone should cross a busy street with caution.*

**cell** /sĕl/ *n.* the smallest part of an organism. *The human body is made up millions of cells.*

**cel•lar** /sĕl′ ər/ *n.* an underground room, used for storage. *The family next door fixed up the cellar as a playroom for their children.*

➤ **Cellar** sounds like **seller**.

**cer•tain** /sûr′ tn/ *adj.* confident; sure; convinced. *She was certain you would win.* (**cer•tain•ly** *adv.*)

**change** /chānj/ *v.* (**chang•es, changed, chang•ing**) to make or become different. *She changed her mind.*

**charge**[1] /chärj/ *v.* **a.** to ask for as payment. *That store will charge two dollars for that notebook.* **b.** to postpone payment on by recording the amount owed. *Charge the groceries to my account.*

**charge**[2] /chärj/ *n.* **a.** an amount asked or made as payment. *There is no charge for this service.* **b.** care; supervision: the scientist in charge of the project.

**charm** /chärm/ *v.* to delight; to please. *The child's smile charmed the audience.*

**chart**[1] /chärt/ *n.* information given in the form of graphs, maps, and tables. *Newspapers often print weather charts.* (**chart•a•ble** *adj.*)

**chart**[2] /chärt/ *v.* to make a map or diagram of. *My job is to chart our class's spelling progress.*

**cheer**[1] /chîr/ *n.* happiness; comfort. *A fire in the fireplace brings warmth and cheer to the room.*

**cheer**[2] /chîr/ *v.* to shout words of approval; to encourage by yelling. *We all cheered for our star player as he came on the field.*

**cheer•ful** /**chîr′** fəl/ *adj.* happy; joyful. *Kari gave a cheerful smile.*

**cheese** /chēz/ *n.* a food made from the thick part of milk. *I like sandwiches made with cheese.*

**chief** /chēf/ *n.* a leader; a head of a tribe or group. *The chief leads the tribal council.*

**child** /chīld/ *n.* (**chil•dren** *pl.*) a young boy or girl. *Corey is the only child absent today.*

**chil•dren** /**chĭl′** drən/ *n.* plural of **child**.

**Chi•nese**[1] /chī **nēz′**/ *adj.* of or from China. *Our city's zoo has a Chinese panda.*

**Chi•nese**[2] /chī **nēz′**/ *n.* **a.** the people of China. *Many Chinese live in rural areas.* **b.** the language of China. *Mr. Chang can speak Chinese.*

**choice** /chois/ *n.* a decision; a selection. *For dinner we will go to a restaurant of your choice.*

**choose** /chōōz/ *v.* (**choos•es, chose, cho•sen, choos•ing**) to select; to decide upon; to pick. *I will let you choose which color you would like.*

**chose** /chōz/ *v.* past tense of **choose**.

**cho•sen** /**chō′** zən/ *v.* past participle of **choose**.

**circ** a Latin root that means "around": *circulate.*

**cir•cle** /**sûr′** kəl/ *n.* a closed curve that forms a perfectly round figure. *Every part of a circle is the same distance from the center.*

**cir•cu•late** /**sûr′** kyə lāt′/ *v.* (**cir•cu•lates, cir•cu•lat•ed, cir•cu•lat•ing**) to move in a regular path back to a starting point. *The blood circulates throughout the body and returns to the heart.*

**cit•y** /**sĭt′** ē/ *n.* (**cit•ies** *pl.*) a large and important town. *Some large cities in the United States are New York, Chicago, Los Angeles, Philadelphia, and Detroit.*

**clear**[1] /klîr/ *adj.* **a.** having no clouds; bright. *The sun shone in the clear sky.* **b.** distinct; not fuzzy. *I cannot get a clear picture on this TV station.*

**clear**[2] /klîr/ *v.* (**clears, cleared, clear•ing**) **a.** to get approval. *Let me clear that idea with the boss.* **b.** to get rid of obstructions. *Please clear the table before we eat.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circus |

**climb** /klīm/ *v.* to go up, often using both hands and feet; to move on a steep slope. *The club members climb mountains all over the state.*

**climb•er** /**klī′** mər/ *n.* one who climbs. *Her goal was to become a mountain climber.*

**close** /klōz/ *v.* (**clos•es, closed, clos•ing**) to shut. *Close the door when you leave.*

**clos•er** /**klōs′** ər/ *adj.* (**close, clos•est**) nearer to something or someone than something else. *Let's go to the closer restaurant so we don't have to walk as far.*

**clothes** /klōz/ or /klōthz/ *n. pl.* garments; articles of dress; clothing. *Some people order all their clothes through a catalog.*

**cloud•less** /**kloud′** lĭs/ *adj.* free of clouds; without clouds. *The cloudless sky was a brilliant blue.*

**clue** /klo͞o/ *n.* a piece of information that helps solve a problem or mystery. *In this game we use word clues to solve the puzzle.*

**coast** /kōst/ *n.* the seashore; land along the sea or ocean. *There are many beaches along the coast of the Pacific Ocean.*

**coil** /koil/ *v.* to wind in spirals or rings; to wind around and around. *The snake coiled around the log.*

**col•lar** /**kŏl′** ər/ *n.* the part of a shirt or coat that circles the neck. *He loosened his tie and his collar.*

**Col•o•ra•do** /kŏl′ ə **răd′** dō/ or /kol′ ə **răd′** də/ *n.* a state in the western United States. *Colorado is in the heart of the Rocky Mountains.*

**col•or•ful** /**kŭl′** ər fəl/ *adj.* having striking colors. *The colorful afghan has all my favorite colors: blue, red, and green.*

**col•ors** /**kŭl′** ərz/ *n. pl.* (**col•or** *sing.*) hues, tints, or shades caused by the effect of light rays on the eyes. *All colors are combinations of red, yellow, and blue.*

**comb**[1] /kōm/ *n.* a tool with teeth, used to smooth or arrange the hair. *Most people carry a brush or comb.*

**comb**[2] /kōm/ *v.* to search carefully. *We will comb the room to find the contact lens.*

**com•mand•er** /kə **măn′** dər/ *n.* a person who commands. *The superintendent of police is the commander of the police force.*

**com•pa•ny** /**kŭm′** pə nē/ *n.* (**com•pa•nies** *pl.*) **a.** a group of people joined together for a common purpose; especially, a business. *Mr. Steel's company makes tractors.* **b.** friendship; society; association. *We enjoy each other's company.* **c.** guests. *We are having company for dinner.*

**com•pare** /kəm **pâr′**/ *v.* (**com•pares, com•pared, com•par•ing**) to examine things for similarities or differences. *If you compare prices, you can save money when you shop.* (**com•par•a•ble** *adj.*)

**com•plete** /kəm **plēt′**/ *adj.* **a.** having no parts lacking; full: *a complete set.* **b.** ended; finished. *The report will be complete tomorrow.* **c.** thorough; perfect: *a complete surprise.*

**con•clu•sion** /kən **klōō′** zhən/ *n.* **a.** the end. *We left in a hurry at the conclusion of the dinner.* **b.** an opinion arrived at by thinking carefully. *The judge's conclusion was that Mr. Benson was innocent.*

**con•fu•sion** /kən **fyōō′** zhən/ *n.* **a.** an act or instance of disorder. *Toby tried to find his mother in the confusion after the fire.* **b.** a mistaking of a person or thing for another. *We could see her confusion in the expression on her face.*

**con•stel•la•tion** /kŏn′ stə **lā′** shən/ *n.* a group of stars with a name. *Many constellations were named after the animals they seemed to form in the sky.* [Latin *constellare* set with stars]

**con•sti•tu•tion** /kŏn′ stĭ **tōō′** shən/ *n.* the rules, laws, and principles by which a nation, state, club, etc., is governed. *The constitution of our club states that we must have a new president every year.*

**con•tain** /kən **tān′**/ *v.* **a.** to have or include as contents. *Each box of dishes contains four bowls.* **b.** to have as a capacity; to be able to hold.

**con•test** /**kŏn′** tĕst′/ *n.* a test, struggle, game, etc., to determine a winner. *Who won the prize in the art contest?*

**con•ti•nent** /**kŏn′** tə nənt/ *n.* one of the seven main masses of land in the world. *We live on the continent of North America.*

**con•tin•ue** /kən **tĭn′** yōō/ *v.* (**con•tin•ues, con•tin•ued, con•tin•u•ing**) **a.** to go on without stopping. *We continued walking until we reached the camp.* **b.** to go on again after stopping; to resume. *The story will be continued next week.*

**cord•less** /**kôrd′** lĭs/ *adj.* having no cord and usually operated by battery. *We can talk on our cordless phone anywhere in the house.*

**cot•tage** /**kŏt′** ĭj/ *n.* a small house. *We spent our vacation in a cottage near the beach.*

**cottage**

**couch** /kouch/ *n.* (**couch•es** *pl.*) a piece of furniture that can seat several people; a sofa. *My friends and I sit on the couch to watch TV.*

**cou•ple** /**kŭp′** əl/ *n.* **a.** two of anything. *They will have to wait a couple of hours for the train.* **b.** two people together. *That couple dances well together.*

**cray•on** /**krā′** ŏn′/ *n.* a stick of colored wax or chalk used for drawing. *The children used crayons to add details to their paintings.*

**crop** /krŏp/ *n.* food plants that are grown and harvested. *The farmer plants crops in the spring.*

**crowd**[1] /kroud/ *n.* many people gathered together. *I lost my brother in the crowd.*

**crowd**[2] /kroud/ *v.* to push or squeeze together in a small space. *The people crowded into the small room.*

**crust** /krŭst/ *n.* the outer surface of a loaf of bread. *Rye bread often has a dark crust.*

**cube** /kyōōb/ *n.* a solid figure with six square sides. *Not all ice cubes are actually in the shape of a cube.* (**cu•bic** *adj.*)

**curl** /kûrl/ *v.* **a.** to twist or turn into rings or spirals. *She curls her hair every night.* **b.** to coil. *The cowboy's lasso was curled around the saddle.*

**cute** /kyo͞ot/ *adj.* delightfully attractive or appealing. *The child looked cute in her rabbit costume.*

**cut•er** /**kyo͞o′** tər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **cute**; being more appealing that someone or something else. *The brown puppy is cuter than the white one.*

**cut•est** /**kyo͞o′** tĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **cute**; being the most appealing of anyone or anything else. *The cutest kitten is the one with the orange and white fur.*

**cy•cle** /**sī′** kəl/ *n.* a series of events that occur over and over in the same order. *The seasons of the year form a cycle.*

**dai•ly** /**dā′** lē/ *adj.* appearing, done, or occurring every day. *He takes a daily walk in the park.*

**damp•en** /**dăm′** pən/ *v.* to make moist or wet. *Dampen the cloth before you begin cleaning.*

**danc•er** /**dăns′** ər/ *n.* a person who participates in the various forms of dance. *The ballet dancer twirled on stage.*

**dan•ger** /**dān′** jər/ *n.* peril; chance of injury or harm. *Learning safety rules can help you avoid danger.* (**dan•ger•ous** *adj.*)

**dark•en** /**därk′** kən/ *v.* to make dark. *He darkened the room by pulling down the shades.*

**dark•ness** /**därk′** nĭs/ *n.* the state or quality of being without light or brightness. *The darkness of the sky told us a storm was coming.* (**dark•ly** *adv.*)

**daugh•ter** /**dô′** tər/ *n.* a female child. *A princess is the daughter of a king or a queen.*

**dead** /dĕd/ *adj.* (**dead•er, dead•est**) no longer living. *The flowers in the vase are dead.*

**deal** /dēl/ *v.* (**deals, dealt, deal•ing**) to handle in a certain way; to cope. *It is important to know how to deal with emergencies.*

**death** /dĕth/ *n.* a dying; the ending of life or existence. *The movie ended with the death of the villain.*

**Dec.** December.

**De•cem•ber** /dĭ **sĕm′** bər/ *n.* the twelfth and final month of the year. *The shortest day of the year comes in December.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**de•clare** /dĭ **klâr′**/ *v.* (**de•clares, de•clared, de•clar•ing**) **a.** to announce publicly and formally; to make known to others. *Only Congress can declare war.* **b.** to say positively and surely; to state openly. *Mark declared he would never again be late for school.* (**de•clar•a•ble** *adj.*)

**de•crease** /**dē′** krēs′/ *n.* a growing less; a decline; a reduction. *There was a sharp decrease in interest after we lost seven games in a row.*

**de•gree** /dĭ **grē′**/ *n.* a unit used to measure temperature. *Water freezes at thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.*

**de•light** /dĭ **līt′**/ *n.* enjoyment; pleasure; joy; something delightful. *Her sense of humor is a delight.*

**de•serve** /dĭ **zûrv′**/ *v.* (**de•serves, de•served, de•serv•ing**) to be worthy of; to have earned as a reward, punishment, right, etc. *Your suggestion deserves further consideration.*

**de•sign**[1] /dĭ **zīn′**/ *v.* to draw or sketch something to be done; to plan the details. *The builder designed a new shopping center.*

**de•sign**[2] /dĭ **zīn′**/ *n.* **a.** a drawing or plan. *The design for the building called for an elevator.* **b.** a pattern or arrangement of colors, materials, etc. *The blanket was woven in an intricate design.*

**des•sert** /dĭ **zûrt′**/ *n.* a food, usually sweet, served at the end of a meal. *I had an apple for dessert.*

**dew** /do͞o/ or /dyo͞o/ *n.* water droplets that form at night on cool surfaces. *In the morning you may see dew on the leaves.*

➤ **Dew** sounds like **due**.

**di•al** /**dī′** əl/ *n.* a device that operates a television, radio, telephone, or other machine. *Before our television had a remote, we had to use the dial to change channels.*

**dic•tion•ar•y** /**dĭk′** shə nĕr′ ē/ *n.* (**dic•tion•ar•ies** *pl.*) a book that explains the words used in a language. *A dictionary gives definitions, pronunciations, and word histories.*

**die** /dī/ *v.* (**dies, died, dy•ing**) to stop living or existing. *The tree will die if it is not watered.*

➤ **Die** sounds like **dye**.

**dif•fer** /**dĭf′** ər/ *v.* to be unlike. *The two nations differ in their languages and customs.*

**din•ner** /**dĭn′** ər/ *n.* the main meal of the day. *Some people have dinner at noon, and other people have dinner in the evening.*

**di•no•saur** /**dī′** nə sôr′/ *n.* any of the group of extinct reptiles of the Mesozoic era. *Tyrannosaurus rex was a type of meat-eating dinosaur.*

**di•rec•tion** /dĭ **rĕk′** shən/ *n.* **a.** act of directing. **b.** an instruction for doing something. **c.** the course along which something moves. **d.** a point on a magnetic compass. *If you take the road in that direction, you will be traveling south.*

**dirt** /dûrt/ *n.* **a.** mud, dust, soot, or any other thing that can soil skin, clothes, and furniture. *You have a smudge of dirt on your face.* **b.** earth; soil. *We put some dirt into the flowerpot.*

**dis-** a Latin prefix that means "apart, away, or not": *disagree.*

**dis•cuss** /dĭ **skŭs′**/ *v.* to talk seriously about. *The committee discussed possible solutions to the traffic problem.*

**di•vi•sion** /dĭ **vĭzh′** ən/ *n.* the act or process of dividing. *Division is the opposite of multiplication.*

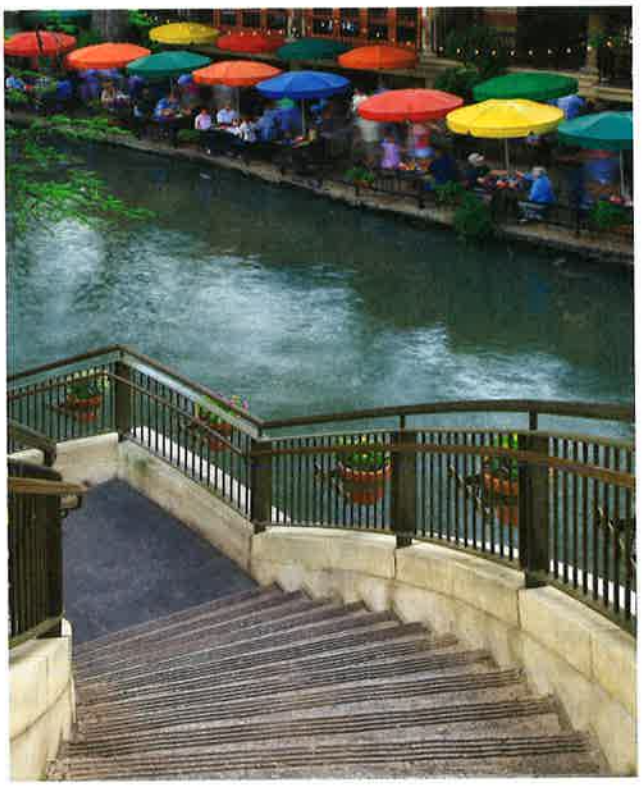
**dodge** /dŏj/ *v.* (**dodg•es, dodged, dodg•ing**) to try to avoid; to stay away from. *The batter stepped back from the plate to dodge the bad pitch.*

**dol•lar** /**dŏl′** ər/ *n.* a coin or note used in several countries for currency. *In the United States a dollar is worth 100 cents.*

**dou•ble** /**dŭb′** əl/ *v.* (**dou•bles, dou•bled, dou•bling**) to make or become twice as great. *The bread dough will double in size as it rises.*

**doubt** /dout/ *v.* to be unsure or uncertain. *I doubt that the Cortez family will be home from vacation before Friday.*

**down•stairs** /**doun′ stârz′**/ *adj.* on the lower floor: *a downstairs patio.*



**downstairs**

**drag** /drăg/ *v.* (**drags, dragged, drag•ging**) to pull slowly along the ground; to haul. *They drag the sled to the top of the hill and then slide down.*

**dream•er** /**drē′** mər/ *n.* one who dreams; one who has visions of the future. *Dreamers often have the ideas that make inventions possible.*

**drew** /drōō/ *v.* (**draws, drew, drawn, draw•ing**) made a design, picture, etc. *The artist drew an outline before he painted the picture.*

**drive** /drīv/ *v.* (**drives, drove, driv•en, driv•ing**) to operate a vehicle. *Marsha's uncle drives a school bus.*

**driv•er** /**drī′** vər/ *n.* any person who drives a vehicle or an animal. *The bus driver collected our fares when we got on.*

**drive•way** /**drīv′** wā/ *n.* a road connecting a building to the street. *We park our car in our driveway.*

**drove** /drōv/ *v.* past tense of **drive**.

**due** /dōō/ or /dyōō/ *adj.* expected; scheduled to arrive. *The bus is not due for two hours.*

➤ **Due** sounds like **dew**.

**du•ty** /**dōō′** tē/ or /**dyōō′** tē/ *n.* (**du•ties** *pl.*) obligatory task or responsibility. *For this cleaning job, your duty will include sweeping.*

**dye** /dī/ *v.* (**dyes, dyed, dye•ing**) to give color to something or change its color. *Today we learned to dye fabric in art class.*

➤ **Dye** sounds like **die**.

**ea•ger** /**ē′** gər/ *adj.* excitedly or impatiently wanting or expecting something. *We were eager for school to begin that day.*

**ea•gle** /**ē′** gəl/ *n.* a large bird of prey with a hooked beak. *The bald eagle is the symbol of the United States.*

**ear** /îr/ *n.* **a.** the organ by which animals and humans hear. *Parts of the ear are located both inside and outside the head.* ***—idiom.*** **keep your ear to the ground**. to stay informed. **b.** the seed-bearing spike of a cereal plant, such as corn. *Please husk this ear of corn.*

**ear•rings** /**îr′** rĭngz/ or /**îr′** ĭngz/ *n. pl.* (**ear•ring** *sing.*) jewelry worn on the ears. *My favorite earrings are in my jewelry box.*

**earth** /ûrth/ *n.* **a.** the third planet from the sun; the planet on which we live. *Earth revolves around the sun.* **b.** ground; soil. *Plant these seeds in black earth.*

**eas•i•er** /**ē′** zī ər / *adj.* the comparative form of **easy**, being the least hard or difficult of two actions. *It is easier for me to write with my left hand than my right hand.*

**eas•i•est** /**ē′** zē ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **easy**; being the least hard or difficult of more than two actions. *The easiest way to get to my house is to take the number 7 bus.*

**east**[1] /ēst/ *n.* the direction to your right as you face north; the direction from which the sun rises. *We saw a glow of light in the east before dawn.*

**east**[2] /ēst/ *adv.* to the east. *We walked east until we came to the hotel.*

**east**[3] /ēst/ *adj.* from the east. *An east wind brought rain and colder temperatures.*

**ea•sy** /**ē′** zē/ *adj.* (**eas•i•er, eas•i•est; eas•i•ly** *adv.*) not hard or difficult. *The quiz was easy for me because I had studied hard.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**ech•o**[1] /**ĕk′** ō/ *n.* (**ech•oes** *pl.*) a repeated sound caused by sound waves bouncing off a surface. *We heard an echo when we shouted into the cave.*

**ech•o**[2] /**ĕk′** ō/ *v.* to send back a sound. *Tunnels often echo.*

**edge** /ĕj/ *n.* border; side. *The cup fell from the edge of the table.*

**ei•ther** /**ē′** *th*ər/ or /**ī′**-/ *adj.* one or the other of two. *I couldn't run faster than either one of my friends.*

**e•lec•tion** /ĭ **lĕk′** shən/ *n.* a choosing or selecting by voting. *We held an election to choose a class president.*

**e•lec•tri•cian** /ĭ lĕk **trĭsh′** ən / or /ē lĕk-/ *n.* a person who installs and repairs electrical equipment. *The electrician rewired the old house.*

**elf** /ĕlf/ *n.* (**elves** *pl.*) a tiny, make-believe being that is full of mischief. *The elf wore a green, pointed hat.*

**elk** /ĕlk/ *n.* (**elk** or **elks** *pl.*) another name for a moose. *The elk had large antlers.*

**else** /ĕls/ *adj.* other; different. *Would you rather ride with someone else?*

**e•mo•tion** /ĭ **mō′** shən/ *n.* a strong reaction or feeling. *Anger is a common emotion.*

**em•ploy** /ĕm **ploi′**/ *v.* to have in one's business as paid workers; to hire. *Factories employ hundreds of people.*

**em•ploy•ment** /ĕm **ploi′** mənt/ *n.* **a.** one's work or occupation. *Mrs. O'Connor found employment as an accountant.* **b.** the hiring of people to do work. *The new computer firm provides employment for more than seventy people.*

**emp•ti•ness** /ĕmp′ tē nĭs/ *n.* the condition of having nothing. *Our voices echoed in the emptiness of the abandoned house.*

**-en** a suffix that means "to cause to be," used to form verbs: *tighten.*

**en•gage** /ĕn **gāj′**/ *v.* (**en•gag•es, en•gaged, en•gag•ing**) to keep busy or to hire. *I will engage you to wash my car.*

**en•gine** /ĕn′ jĭn/ *n.* a machine that changes fuel and energy into motion. *Most automobile engines use gasoline.*

**en•joy** /ĕn **joi′**/ *v.* to get pleasure from. *Did you enjoy the movie last night?*

**en•joy•ment** /ĕn **joi′** mənt/ *n.* the state of enjoying. *Her enjoyment of the play was evident from her delighted smile.*

**e•nor•mous** /ĭ **nôr′** məs/ *adj.* very large. *The whale is an enormous sea animal.*

**e•nough** /ĭ **nŭf′**/ *adj.* as much or as many as needed. *The campers had enough food and water for three days.*

**en•ter** /ĕn′ tər/ *v.* to come or go into. *The students enter the school through the doorway closest to their classrooms.*

**e•qual** /ē′ kwəl/ *adj.* of the same value, size, rank, amount, etc. *The two boys are of equal weight; they both weigh seventy pounds.*

**-er**[1] a suffix, used to form nouns, that means: **a.** "one who": *swimmer.* **b.** "thing that": *toaster.*

**-er**[2] an adjective or adverbial suffix that means "more": *lazier, faster.*

**e•ro•sion** /ĭ **rō′** zhən/ *n.* process of slowly wearing away. *The erosion of the cliffs took thousands of years.*

**-ese** a Latin suffix that means "of, relating to, or characteristic of": *Chinese.*

**-est** an adjective or adverbial suffix that means "most": *cutest, easiest.*

**eu•ro** or **Eu•ro** /**yo͝or′** ō/ *n.* (**eu•ros** or **eu•ro's** *pl.*) the basic unit of currency among participating European countries. *The sandwich cost a euro.*

**Eu•rope** /**yo͝or′** əp/ *n.* the continent east of the Atlantic Ocean and west of Asia. *Our teacher visited France and Spain on her trip to Europe.*

**eve•ry•day** /ĕv′ rē **dā′**/ *adj.* ordinary; all right for the usual day or event. *You should wear your everyday clothes to play outside.*

**eve•ry•one** /ĕv′ rē wŭn′/ *pron.* each person; everybody. *Everyone in the class received a permission slip for the field trip.*

**eve•ry•thing** /ĕv′ rē thĭng′/ *pron.* all things; each thing. *Everything is going right for me.*

**ex•am•ple** /ĭg **zăm′** pəl/ *n.* a sample; a model; something that may be imitated. *If you don't understand how to do the problems, look at the example.*

**ex•cla•ma•tion** /ĕk′ sklə **mā′** shən/ *n.* an excited utterance. *When Marcy saw the puppy, she let out an exclamation of delight.*

**ex•plain** /ĭk **splān′**/ *v.* **a.** to make something clear; to tell what something means. *The teacher explained the difference between nouns and verbs.* **b.** to give a reason for; to tell the cause of. *Can you explain why you didn't do your homework?* (**ex•pla•na•tion** *n.*)

**eyes** /īz/ *n.* the parts of the body with which humans and animals see. *Tears keep your eyes moist.*

**face** /fās/ *n.* the front part of the head; that part of the head on which the eyes, nose, and mouth are located. *Her face was covered by a funny mask.*

**fail** /fāl/ *v.* to be unsuccessful. *The pirates failed to find the treasure they had hidden.*

**fame** /fām/ *n.* the state of being well-known; respect; recognition. *George Washington was a man of great fame.*

**fare** /fâr/ *n.* money charged for a trip. *You pay a fare to ride in a bus, taxi, train, or airplane.*

**farm•er** /**fär′** mər/ *n.* a person who owns or operates a farm. *Farmers often store chopped corn in tall towers called silos.*

**fas•ten** /**făs′** ən/ *v.* to join; to attach. *We can fasten this lamp to the wall over my desk.*

**fa•ther** /**fä′** thər/ *n.* the male parent. *My father helped me study my spelling.*

**fa•vor** /**fā′** vər/ *n.* **a.** a kind or thoughtful act. *We did him a favor by mowing his lawn.* **b.** a small gift. *Each child received a balloon as a party favor.*

**fear**[1] /fîr/ *n.* a feeling of fright or alarm. *Dogs show fear by putting their tails between their legs.* (**fear•ful** *adj.*, **fear•less** *adj.*, **fear•less•ly** *adv.*)

**fear**[2] /fîr/ *v.* to be afraid of. *My little sister fears thunder and lightning.*

**Feb.** February.

**Feb•ru•ar•y** /**fĕb′** ro͞o ĕr′ ē/ *n.* the second month of the year. *February is the shortest month.*

**feel** /fēl/ *v.* (**feels, felt, feel•ing**) **a.** to sense by touch. *Feel how soft this cloth is!* **b.** to have a feeling or emotion. *I feel happy.*

**felt** /fĕlt/ *v.* past tense of **feel**.

**fe•male** /**fē'** māl'/ *n.* a girl; a woman. *The conductor of the orchestra was a female.*

**few** /fyo͞o/ *adj.* not many. *Few copies of this rare book are available.*

**fic** a Latin root that means "to make": *fiction.*

**fic•tion** /**fĭk'** shən/ *n.* writings about imaginary events and people. *Short stories and novels are types of fiction.*

**field** /fēld/ *n.* a piece of open land, usually part of a farm, often used for planting crops. *Some wheat fields are several miles wide.*

**field trip** /fēld trĭp/ *n.* a visit made by students and teachers for the purposes of firsthand observation. *Our field trip to the zoo was very interesting.*

**fight** /fīt/ *v.* (**fights, fought, fight•ing**) to oppose strongly, especially in battle. *Our team tried to fight well, but the other team won.*

**find** /fīnd/ *v.* (**finds, found, find•ing**) **a.** to come upon accidentally; to locate an object by chance. *You may find my brother at the supermarket.* **b.** to look for and get back a lost object. *We will find my watch.*

**fin•ish** /**fĭn'** ĭsh/ *v.* to reach the end. *The important part of a marathon is to finish the race.*

**firm**[1] /fûrm/ *adj.* hard; solid. *They left the muddy road and walked on firm ground.* (**firm•ly** *adj.*)

**firm**[2] /fûrm/ *n.* a business partnership of two or more persons. *Samuel got a job with a law firm.*

**fish** /fĭsh/ *n.* (**fish** or **fish•es** *pl.*) an animal that lives in water, has fins, and breathes through gills. *Most fish have scales covering their bodies.* ***—idiom.*** **fish or cut bait**. take action.

**fit•ness** /**fĭt'** nĭs/ *n.* the state of being in good physical condition. *Many people exercise for greater fitness.*

**flash•light** /**flăsh'** līt'/ *n.* a small light powered by batteries. *Campers carry flashlights to find their way in the dark.*

**fla•vor** /**flā'** vər/ *n.* a particular taste. *Lemonade can have a sweet or tart flavor.*

**flight** /flīt/ *n.* a scheduled trip on an airplane. *The next flight to Chicago departs at 3:05.*

**flood** /flŭd/ *n.* water that flows over normally dry land. *The low bridge was under water for an hour after the flash flood.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | it**e**m, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | penc**i**l, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gall**o**p, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**flood•light** /**flŭd'** līt'/ *n.* a lighting unit for projecting a beam of light. *The rescuers used a floodlight to find the lost dog.*

**floun•der** /**floun'** dər/ *n.* a flat fish. *Baked flounder is a popular item on the menu.*

**flour** /flour/ *n.* a fine powder of ground grain, usually wheat. *Flour is used in making breads.*

➤ **Flour** sounds like **flower**.

**flow•er** /**flou'** ər/ *n.* the blossom of a plant. *Many flowers bloom in the spring.*

➤ **Flower** sounds like **flour**.

**flower**

**flute** /flo͞ot/ *n.* a woodwind instrument with a side opening across which a player blows. *The flute makes a high, soft sound.*

**foil** /foil/ *n.* a sheet of metal so thin it seems like paper. *The sandwiches are wrapped in aluminum foil.*

**fold** /fōld/ *v.* to close or bend parts of something together in order to fit it into a smaller space. *When we take down the flag, we fold it into the shape of a triangle.*

**fol•low•ing** /**fŏl′** ō ĭng/ *v.* (**fol•lows, fol•lowed, fol•low•ing**) going, proceeding, or coming after. *I don't know how to get there, so we are following you.*

**foot** /fo͝ot/ *n.* (**feet** *pl.*) **a.** the part of the body at the end of the leg. *Start the dance with your left foot.* **b.** a measure of length. *Twelve inches make a foot.*

**for•est** /**fôr′** ĭst/ *n.* an area covered with trees; woods. *We found pine cones in the forest.*

**for•est•er** /**fôr′** ĭ stər/ or /**fŏr′** ĭ stər/ *n.* a person trained in caring for the forest. *The park manager hired a forester to help care for the trees.*

**for•get** /fôr **gĕt′**/ or /fər-/ *v.* (**for•gets, for•got, for•got•ten, for•get•ting**) to fail to remember. *He sometimes forgets his umbrella on rainy days.*

**for•got** /fôr **gŏt′**/ or /fər-/ *v.* past tense of **forget**.

**for•got•ten** /fər **gŏt′** ən/ *v.* past participle of **forget**.

**form** /fôrm/ *v.* to give a shape to something. *Potters form dishes out of clay.*

**forth** /fôrth/ or /fōrth/ *adv.* forward; onward. *From that day forth the princess lived happily.*

**for•ty** /**fôr′** tē/ *n.* one more than thirty-nine; four times ten; 40. *Her father's age is forty.*

**fought** /fôt/ *v.* past tense of **fight**.

**found** /found/ *v.* (**finds, found, find•ing**) came upon accidentally; located an object by chance. *I found my favorite ice cream at the store.*

**four•teenth**[1] /fôr **tēnth′**/ or /fōr-/ *adj.* next after the thirteenth. *This is the store's fourteenth year in business.*

**four•teenth**[2] /fôr **tēnth′**/ or /fōr-/ *n.* one of fourteen equal parts. *Two is one fourteenth of twenty-eight.*

**Fourth of July** *n.* United States Independence Day that celebrates the adoption of the Declaration of Independence in 1776. *We watch fireworks on the Fourth of July.*

**frac•tion** /**frăk′** shən/ *n.* one or more of the equal parts into which a thing is divided. *The fraction $\frac{3}{4}$ represents three of four equal parts.*

**franc** /frăngk/ *n.* the currency used in France before the euro was introduced. *The toy cost one franc.*

**France** /frăns/ *n.* a country in western Europe. *The Eiffel Tower is in Paris, France.*

**free•dom** /**frē′** dəm/ *n.* the state of being free; liberty. *The Revolutionary War was fought to gain freedom for our country.*

**freeze** /frēz/ *v.* (**freez•es, froze, froz•en, freez•ing**) **a.** became ice; turn to ice. *The lake will freeze during the night.* **b.** chill to make something cold and as hard as ice. *We will freeze the vegetables from our garden so we can eat them all year.*

**freeze**

**French**[1] /frĕnch/ *adj.* of or from France. *A beret is a soft French cap.*

**French**[2] /frĕnch/ *n.* **a.** the national language of France, also spoken in other parts of the world. *Can you speak French?* **b.** the people of France. *The French consider cooking an art.*

**fresh•en** /**frĕsh′** ən/ *v.* to make fresh. A light shower freshens the garden.

**Fri.** Friday.

**Fri•day** /**frī′** dē/ or /-dā/ *n.* the sixth day of the week. *Friday is the end of the school week.* [Old English *Frigedæg,* Freya's day.]

**friend** /frĕnd/ *n.* a person whom one knows, likes, and trusts. *My best friend and I went camping.*

**fright** /frīt/ *n.* a sudden fear. *The village was filled with fright when the forest fire started.*

**fright•en** /**frīt′** n/ *v.* **a.** to make afraid; to scare. *The actors' costumes frightened the little girl.* **b.** to cause to move by making afraid. *The campfire frightened away the wolves.*

**froze** /frōz/ *v.* past tense of **freeze**.

**fruit** /fro͞ot/ *n.* (**fruit** or **fruits** *pl.*) the part of certain plants that contains seeds and is good to eat. *Oranges, grapes, and pears are types of fruit.*

**fu•el** /**fyo͞o′** əl/ *n.* a material burned to produce heat or power. *Most cars use unleaded fuel.*

**-ful** an English suffix that means: **a.** full of or having, used to form adjectives: *meaningful.* **b.** the amount that fills, used to form nouns: *cupful.*

**fun•ny** /fŭn′ ē/ *adj.* (**fun•ni•er, fun•ni•est**) causing laughter or amusement. *The joke was funny.*

**fur** /fûr/ *n.* the thick, soft hair that is on the bodies of many animals. *We brush the dog's fur to keep it shiny.*

**fuse** /fyo͞oz/ *n.* a strip of metal in an electrical circuit that interrupts the circuit if the current becomes too strong. *I think we blew a fuse because the lights are out!*

**gadg•et** /găj′ ĭt/ *n.* a small mechanical object with a practical use but often thought of as a novelty. *With this gadget you don't need your hands to open a can.*

**gar•den•er** /gärd′ nər/ *n.* a person who takes care of a garden or does gardening. *Sharon worked as a gardener last summer.*

**gath•er** /găth′ ər/ *v.* to bring or come together. *When clouds gather it often means rain.*

**geese** /gēs/ *n. pl.* (**goose** *sing.*) swimming birds that look like ducks but have larger bodies and longer necks. *Male geese are called ganders.*

**gel•a•tin** /jĕl′ ə tn/ *n.* a jellylike substance. *The gelatin had fruit in it.*

**gem** /jĕm/ *n.* a precious stone. *Diamonds and emeralds are gems.*

**gen•er•al** /jĕn′ ər əl/ *n.* a top army officer, in command of many troops. *There are five ranks of general, who wear from one to five stars.*

**gen•tle** /jĕn′ tl/ *adj.* light; soft. *The gentle breeze rustled through the leaves.*

**Ger•man**[1] /jûr′ mən/ *adj.* of or from Germany. *Oktoberfest is a German festival.*

**Ger•man**[2] /jûr′ mən/ *n.* **a.** one born or living in Germany. *The composer Bach was a famous German.* **b.** the language spoken in Germany, Austria, and parts of Switzerland. *Many English words come from German.*

**Ger•ma•ny** /jûr′ mə nē/ *n.* a country in north-central Europe. *Between 1949 and 1989, Germany was divided into East Germany and West Germany.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**gi•gan•tic** /jī găn′ tĭk/ *adj.* extremely large. *Elephants and whales are gigantic.*

**gig•gle**[1] /gĭg′ əl/ *n.* a short laugh. *Hearing her giggle made everyone smile.*

**gig•gle**[2] /gĭg′ əl/ *v.* (**gig•gles, gig•gled, gig•gling**) to give repeated high-pitched laughs. *The children giggle when they watch cartoons.*

**glare** /glâr/ *n.* **a.** an angry or fierce stare. *When he upsets me, I give him a glare.* **b.** a brilliant light. *The sun's glare made driving difficult.*

**glow**[1] /glō/ *v.* to give off light; to shine. *Fireflies glow in the dark.*

**glow**[2] /glō/ *n.* a soft light. *You can see the glow of the lamp through the window.*

**glue** /glo͞o/ *n.* a sticky liquid that hardens to hold things together. *Broken toys can be mended with glue.*

**gnat** /năt/ *n.* a very small fly. *Rotten fruit may attract a gnat.*

**gnaw** /nô/ *v.* to bite or chew on persistently. *That dog is hungry; we will give him a bone to gnaw.*

**goal** /gōl/ *n.* a purpose; an aim. *Mark's goal is to play the double bass in a symphony orchestra.*

**good-bye or good-by** /go͝od bī′/ *n.* an expression of farewell. *We said our good-byes on the railway platform.*

**goose** /go͞os/ *n.* (**geese** *pl.*) a swimming bird that looks like a duck, but has a larger body and a longer neck. *The male goose is called a gander.* —***idiom.*** **goose is cooked.** big trouble.

**gov•ern•ment** /gŭv′ ərn mənt/ *n.* **a.** a system of ruling or managing. *Our American government is a democracy, which means that the power to make laws comes from the citizens.* **b.** the people in charge of such a system. *The government has approved the new dam.*

**grand•fa•ther** /grănd′ fä′ *th*ər/ or /grăn′ fä′ *th*ər/ *n.* the father of one's mother or father. *One of my grandfathers lives here in town; my other grandfather lives in the country.*

**grand•moth•er** /grănd′ mŭ*th*′ ər/ or /grăn′ mŭ*th*′ ər/ *n.* the mother of one's father or mother. *My grandmother is coming to my birthday party.*

**gray** also **grey** /grā/ *adj.* (**gray•er, gray•est**) **a.** of or relating to the color between the extremes of black and white. *Her new gray skirt was a real bargain.* **b.** dull or dark. *It was a gray, rainy afternoon.* **c.** having gray hair. *My father turned gray when he was in his twenties.* **d.** lacking in cheer; gloomy. *He was in a gray mood until the movie started.*

**gray•est** /grā′ ĭst/ *adj.* (**gray, gray•er**) having the most gray of anything else. *That is the grayest sky I've seen this summer.*

**Greece** /grēs/ *n.* a country in southeastern Europe that borders on the Mediterranean Sea. *Corinth and Athens are cities in Greece.*

**Greek**[1] /grēk/ *n.* **a.** one born or living in Greece. *The ancient Greeks were the first people to stage plays.* **b.** the language of Greece. *Greek uses a different alphabet from English.*

**Greek**[2] /grēk/ *adj.* of or from Greece. *We saw Greek sculpture at the museum.*

**gro•cer•y** /grō′ sə rē/ *n.* (**gro•cer•ies** *pl.*) a store selling food and household supplies. *We carried two bags of groceries home from the grocery store.*

**group** /groōp/ *n.* a gathering or arranging of people or objects. *There is a large group of people in the hotel lobby.*

**grow** /grō/ *v.* (**grows, grew, grown, grow•ing**) to expand or increase in size. *Trees grow slowly.*

**grown** /grōn/ *v.* a form of **grow**.

**growth** /grōth/ *n.* **a.** the process of growing. *Social scientists are looking for ways to control population growth.* **b.** the development achieved by growing. *Some plants reach full growth in a single season.*

**guess** /gĕs/ *v.* (**guess•es, guessed, guess•ing**) form an opinion with little or no evidence. *Tom is running out of time, so he will guess the rest of the answers on the test.*

➤ **Guessed** sounds like **guest**.

**guest** /gĕst/ *n.* a person entertained in one's house. *Our guest will stay in our spare room this weekend.*

➤ **Guest** sounds like **guessed**.

**gym** /jĭm/ *n.* a gymnasium. *The teams practice in the gym.*

**half** /hăf/ *n.* (**halves** *pl.*) one of two equal parts. *Which half of the sandwich do you want?*

**hal•ter** /hôl′ tər/ *n.* the leather headgear for leading a horse or other animal. *Be careful as you place the halter on the horse.*

**hap•pi•er** /hăp′ ē ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **happy**; being more joyful than someone or something else.

**hap•pi•est** /hăp′ ē ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **happy**; being the most joyful of anyone or anything else. *The A on his spelling test made Enrique the happiest person in the whole class.*

**hap•pi•ness** /hăp′ ē nĭs/ *n.* the condition of feeling glad. *Here's a toast to your good fortune and happiness!*

**hap•py** /hăp′ ē/ *adj.* (**hap•pi•er, hap•pi•est; hap•pi•ly** *adv.*) feeling or showing pleasure; joyful. *The happy man whistled as he worked.*

**hard•en** /här′ dn/ *v.* to make or become hard. *The ground hardens during cold weather.*

**hare** /hâr/ *n.* an animal like a rabbit, but much larger. *A hare has strong legs and can run fast.*

**hare**

**har•ness** /**härʹ** nĭs/ *n.* (**har•ness•es** *pl.*) the set of leather straps and bands with which an animal pulls a plow or other vehicle. *Gently tug the harness to have the horse stop.*

**haul** /hôl/ *v.* to pull with force; to drag. *The girls hauled their rowboat out of the water.*

**head** /hĕd/ *n.* **a.** the uppermost part of the body of a vertebrate, containing the brain and the eyes, ears, nose, mouth, and jaws. *My new hat covered my head and my ears.* **b.** authority; the one in charge or in the lead. *The head of the band marched in front.*

**health•i•er** /**hĕlʹ** thē ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **healthy**; being of better health than someone or something else. *If you eat more vegetables, you will be healthier.*

**health•i•est** /**hĕlʹ** thē ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **healthy**; being of the best health of anyone or anything else. *The healthiest person is one who exercises and eats well.*

**hear** /hîr/ *v.* (**heard, hear•ing**) **a.** take in sound through the ears. *We hear every word clearly.* **b.** listened to; paid attention to. *Our teacher quizzed us on what we could hear her say.*

**heav•i•er** /**hĕvʹ** ē ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **heavy**; having more weight than someone or something else. *This box is heavier than that one.*

**heav•i•est** /**hĕvʹ** ē ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **heavy**; having the most weight of anyone or anything else. *This box is the heaviest of all of them.*

**heav•y** /**hĕvʹ** ē/ *adj.* (**heav•i•er, heav•i•est; heav•i•ly** *adv.*) hard to move because of its weight; not light. *The maple tree's heavy trunk will need two people to lift it.*

**hedge** /hĕj/ *n.* a thick row of bushes planted as a fence or boundary. *A hedge should be trimmed evenly.*

**held** /hĕld/ *v.* past tense of **hold**.

**hel•lo** /hĕ **lō**ʹ/ *interj.* (**hel•los** *pl.*) something said to express greeting. *The crossing guard always says "Hello" as we go by.*

**help•ful** /**hĕlpʹ** fəl/ *adj.* giving aid; useful. *It was really helpful of you to do the dishes for me.*

**help•less** /**hĕlpʹ** lĭs/ *adj.* not able to help oneself or others. *We felt helpless to stop the school's litter problem until we planned a recycling program.*

**herd** /hûrd/ *n.* a number of animals that feed and move about together. *The herd of deer was hard to spot in the dim forest.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | it**e**m, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | penc**i**l, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gall**o**p, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**he•ro** /**hîrʹ** ō/ *n.* (**he•ros** or **he•roes** *pl.*) a person admired for bravery or fine qualities. *Abraham Lincoln is a national hero.*

**her•self** /hər **sĕlfʹ**/ *pron.* **a.** her own self. *Jennifer fell down and hurt herself.* **b.** the person or self she usually is. *Beth isn't acting like herself today.*

**high** /hī/ *adj.* tall; far above the ground. *Eagles build nests on high cliffs.* (**high•ness** *n.*)

**high•er** /**hīʹ** ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **high**; being the more tall or high off the ground than anyone or anything. *The top of the cabinet is higher than the bookcase.*

**high school** /**hīʹ** sko͞olʹ/ *n.* a level of school that follows elementary school; secondary school. *High school usually includes grades 9 through 12.*

**high•way** /**hīʹ** wāʹ/ *n.* a main road. *Highways are usually numbered to simplify maps and road signs.*

**hike** /hīk/ *v.* (**hikes, hiked, hik•ing**) to take a long walk for exercise or pleasure. *We sang marching songs as we hiked up the trail.*

**hik•er** /**hīʹ** kər/ *n.* one who hikes. *Sturdy, comfortable shoes are a must for every hiker.*

**hire** /hīr/ *v.* (**hires, hired, hir•ing**) to employ; to pay a person for working. *Because of good business, the store hired three more clerks.*

**hoist** /hoist/ *v.* to lift; to raise. *We hoist the flag every morning before noon.*

**hold** /hōld/ *v.* (**holds, held, hold•ing**) to have or take and keep; to grasp. *Hold tightly to the dog's leash.*

**hol•i•day** /**hŏlʹ** ĭ dāʹ/ *n.* a day on which a special event is celebrated. *Independence Day is the favorite holiday of many people.* [Middle English *holidai,* holy day]

**home•less** /hōm′ lĭs/ *adj.* without a home. *Our community center provides a shelter for homeless people.*

**home•mak•er** /hōm′ mā′ kər/ *n.* a person with the responsibility of managing a household, including cooking, cleaning, and caring for children. *Being a homemaker is a demanding job.*

**home•work** /hōm′ wûrk/ *n.* work for school that is done at home. *Our class has ten arithmetic problems for homework.*

**hon•est** /ŏn′ ĭst/ *adj.* tending not to lie, cheat, or steal; able to be trusted. *An honest person always tells the truth.*

**hoof** /ho͝of/ or /ho͞of/ *n.* (**hooves** or **hoofs** *pl.*) the horny covering of the toes or lower part of the foot of a mammal, such as a horse, ox, or deer. *The horse's hoof was muddy.*

**hooves** /ho͝ovz/ or /ho͞ovz/ *n. pl.* (**hoof** *sing.*) the curved coverings of horn that protect the feet of animals. *The cow's hooves were muddy.*

**hope•less** /hōp′ lĭs/ *adj.* having very little chance of working out right. *After darkness fell, they decided the search for the ball was hopeless.*

**ho•tel** /hō tĕl′/ *n.* a place that provides guests with lodging and usually meals and other services. *Our grandparents stayed in a hotel near the beach in Florida.*

**hot•ter** /hŏt′ ər/ *adj.* (**hot, hot•test**) **a.** warmer than something or someone else; having a higher temperature than something or someone else. *You feel hotter when you have a fever.* **b.** sharper to the taste than something else; more peppery or more spicy. *This salsa is hotter than the salsa I make at home.*

**hour•ly**[1] /our′ lē/ *adv.* every hour. *The bells in our school ring hourly.*

**hour•ly**[2] /our′ lē/ *adj.* for every hour. *She receives an hourly wage of six dollars.*

**house** /hous/ *n.* a building in which to live. *The fine old house is for sale.*

**how•ev•er** /hou ĕv′ ər/ *conj.* nevertheless. *I've never tasted eggplant before; however, it looks delicious.*

**huge** /hyo͞oj/ *adj.* very large. *A skyscraper is a huge building.*

**hu•man** /hyo͞o′ mən/ *adj.* of or relating to persons. *It is a human weakness to put things off.*

**hurt•ful** /hûrt′ fəl/ *adj.* causing pain or injury. *Your hurtful behavior will not help you make friends.*



**hy•drant** /hī′ drənt/ *n.* a discharge pipe with a valve and a spout at which water may be drawn from a water main; a fireplug. *The fire hydrant in front of our house is yellow.*

**-ian** an English suffix that means "one who, of or relating to": *electrician.*

**i•ci•cle** /ī′ sĭ kəl/ *n.* a pointed, hanging piece of ice, formed by the freezing of dripping water. *Icicles hung from the roof of the house.*

**i•de•a** /ī dē′ ə/ *n.* a thought; a plan. *Bringing plants to decorate the room was Kristin's idea.*

**i•ma•gine** /ĭ măj′ ĭn/ *v.* (**i•ma•gines, i•ma•gined, i•ma•gin•ing**) **a.** to make up an idea or a picture in the mind. *I can imagine all the things I would do if I had the time.* **b.** to suppose. *I imagine they'll be there soon.*

**im•i•ta•tion** /ĭm′ ĭ tā′ shən/ *n.* something copied from the original. *Jaime's imitation of Luis was perfect.*

**im•por•tant** /ĭm pôr′ tnt/ *adj.* **a.** meaning a great deal; serious. *Your birthday is important to you.* **b.** having power or authority. *These parking places are reserved for important officials.*

**in•clude** /ĭn klo͞od′/ *v.* (**in•cludes, in•clud•ed, in•clud•ing**) **a.** to contain; to cover. *The price of the radio includes the tax.* **b.** to put in as part of the total. *Don't forget to include the guests in the other room.*

**In•di•a** /ĭn′ dē ə/ *n.* a large country in southern Asia. *Only China has more people than India.*

**In•di•an**[1] /ĭn′ dē ən/ *n.* one born or living in India. *He met an Indian from Bombay.*

**In•di•an**[2] /ĭn′ dē ən/ *adj.* of or from India. *She was wearing an Indian sari.*

**in•fant** /ĭn′ fənt/ *n.* baby. *The infant is riding in the stroller.*

**in•fect** /ĭn fĕkt′/ *v.* to make ill by the introduction of germs. *A wound can become infected if it is not kept clean.*

**in•stead** /ĭn stĕd′/ *adv.* in place of. *Since the manager wasn't in, we talked to her assistant instead.*

**in•vi•ta•tion** /ĭn′ vĭ tā′ shən/ *n.* a spoken or written request for someone's attendance. *I sent Lucy an invitation to my birthday party.*

**in•vite** /ĭn **vīt′**/ *v.* (**in•vites, in•vit•ed, in•vit•ing**) to ask a person to go somewhere or do something. *My mother invited my friends to lunch.*

**-ion** a Latin noun suffix that means "being, condition of, or result of": *explanation, relation.*

**Ire•land** /**īr′** lənd/ *n.* the island country west of Britain. *The shamrock is an emblem of Ireland.*

**I•rish**[1] /**ī′** rĭsh/ *n.* the people of Ireland. *The Irish are known for their lilting accent.*

**I•rish**[2] /**ī′** rĭsh/ *adj.* of or from Ireland. *The Irish countryside is green and beautiful.*

**i•ron** /**ī′** ərn/ *v.* to press with an iron to remove wrinkles. *Most fabrics today do not need to be ironed.*

**-ish** an English suffix that means "of, relating to, or being": *Spanish.*

**is•land** /**ī′** lənd/ *n.* a piece of land with water all around it. *People must take a boat or an airplane to get to an island.*

**island**

**I•tal•ian**[1] /ĭ **tăl′** yən/ *adj.* of or from Italy. *"Pizza" is an Italian word.*

**I•tal•ian**[2] /ĭ **tăl′** yən/ *n.* **a.** one born or living in Italy. *Many Italians live in Rome.* **b.** the language of Italy. *Many operas are sung in Italian.*

**It•a•ly** /**ĭt′** ə lē/ *n.* a country in southern Europe bordering on the Mediterranean. *Italy is shaped like a boot.*

**its** /ĭts/ *pron.* of or belonging to it. *The bird left its nest.*

**it's** it is.

## Pronunciation Key

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**it•self** /ĭt **sĕlf′**/ *pron.* **a.** its own self. *The bird cleaned itself in the puddle.* **b.** a word used to make a statement stronger. *No wonder the house is expensive; the land itself cost thousands of dollars.*

# J

**Jan.** January.

**Jan•u•ar•y** /**jăn′** yo͞o ĕr′ ē/ *n.* the first month of the year. *January has thirty-one days.*

**Ja•pan** /jə **păn′**/ *n.* a small country of islands to the east of China. *Tokyo is the capital of Japan.*

**Ja•pan•ese**[1] /jăp′ ə **nēz′**/ *adj.* of or from Japan. *Japanese writing is very different from ours.*

**Ja•pan•ese**[2] /jăp′ ə **nēz′**/ *n.* **a.** the people of Japan. *Many Japanese live in apartments.* **b.** the language of Japan. *Japanese is an interesting language to learn.*

**jew•el•er** /**jo͞o′** ə lər/ *n.* a person who makes, repairs, or deals in jewelry, precious stones, or watches. *I took my broken watch to the jeweler for repair.*

**jog** /jŏg/ *v.* (**jogs, jogged, jog•ging**) to run at a slow, regular pace. *She likes to jog early in the morning.*

**jog•ger** /**jŏg′** ər/ *n.* a person who runs or rides at a slow trot. *We watched the jogger jog three laps around the track.*

**join** /join/ *v.* to become a member of. *Next year I am going to join the chess club.*

**joint** /joint/ *n.* a place where two bones are connected, allowing motion. *Your leg bends at the knee joint.*

**joy** /joi/ *n.* a feeling of happiness or pleasure. *Imagine my joy when I received Sandy's letter.*

**joy•ful** /**joi'** fəl/ *adj.* full of joy. *The first and last days of school are always joyful.*

**judge** /jŭj/ *n.* one who presides over a court of law by hearing cases and making decisions. *A judge must be completely fair.*

**judg•ment** /**jŭj'** mənt/ *n.* **a.** a decision reached through careful thought. *The final judgment of the class was in favor of a picnic rather than a trip to the zoo.* **b.** opinion. *In my judgment such a plan will never succeed.* **c.** the ability to make wise decisions. *Consuela has excellent judgment concerning horses.*

**juice** /jo͞os/ *n.* the liquid that can be squeezed out of fruits, meat, or vegetables. *He has a glass of orange juice every morning.*

**Ju•ly** /jo͞o **lī'**/ *n.* the seventh month of the year. *July is usually hot in Texas.*

**jum•ble** /**jŭm'** bəl/ *v.* (**jum•bles, jum•bled, jum•bling**) to mix up. *The letters of the word were jumbled in the puzzle.*

**jump•er** /**jŭm'** pər/ *n.* one that jumps. *The basketball player is a good jumper.*

**June** /jo͞on/ *n.* the sixth month of the year. *June has thirty days.*

**jun•gle** /**jŭng'** gəl/ *n.* wild land near the equator with thickly grown tropical plants. *Parrots and monkeys live in the jungle.*

**keen•ly** /**kēn'** lē/ *adv.* with sharpness or quickness in seeing, hearing, or thinking. *The expert detective keenly solved the crime.*

**keep** /kēp/ *v.* (**keeps, kept, keep•ing**) **a.** to store; to put away; to save. *I keep all my old homework.* **b.** to continue. *Let's keep looking until we find it.*

**kept** /kĕpt/ *v.* past tense of **keep**.

**ket•tle** /**kĕt'** l/ *n.* a pot used for heating liquids. *Put the kettle on the stove.*

**kind** /kīnd/ *adj.* friendly; thoughtful of others. *Everyone likes kind persons.*

**kind•er** /**kīnd'** ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **kind**; being the more thoughtful of and helpful to others than anyone. *He is kinder to his little brother now.*

**kind•est** /**kīnd'** ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **kind**; being the most thoughtful of and helpful to others than anyone else. *Marco's mother is the kindest person I know.*

**kind•ness** /**kīnd'** nĭs/ *n.* friendly or helpful behavior. *His kindness earned him the respect of the whole class.*

**knap•sack** /**năp'** săk/ *n.* a canvas or leather bag worn or carried on the back and used to hold food, clothing, equipment, etc. *The hikers carried knapsacks and sleeping bags.* [German *knappsack.*]

**knee** /nē/ *n.* the joint in the middle of the leg. *You bend your knees when you walk.*

**knew** /no͞o/ or /nyo͞o/ v. (**knows, knew, known, know•ing**) **a.** understood; had information about. *You knew where our car was?* **b.** was aware; was sure. *We knew we had heard a noise.* **c.** was acquainted with. *I knew them for years.* **d.** had skill in. *You knew how to write your name before you were four years old?*

**knife** /nīf/ *n.* (**knives** *pl.*) a flat cutting instrument with a sharp blade. *Jean sliced the carrots with a knife.*

**knight** /nīt/ *n.* during the Middle Ages, a warrior who was honored with a military rank by a king or lord. *The king called his knights together to plan the battle.*

**knock** /nŏk/ *v.* to strike with the fist or with a hard object. *I knocked on the door, but no one answered.*

**knot** /nŏt/ *n.* a fastening made by tying. *We joined the two ropes with a square knot.*

**know** /nō/ *v.* (**knows, knew, known, know•ing**) **a.** to have the facts about; to understand. *Do you know how hail is formed?* **b.** to be acquainted with. *I know the Bakers, but I'm not sure where they live.*

**known** /nōn/ *v.* a form of **know**.

**knuck•le** /**nŭk'** əl/ *n.* a joint in a finger. *I broke my knuckle playing baseball.*

# L

**La•bor Day** *n.* holiday on the first Monday in September to honor working people in the United States and Canada. *We like to have a picnic on Labor Day.*

**la•dy** /lā′ dē/ *n.* (**la•dies** *pl.*) a polite term for a woman. *Ladies and gentlemen, may I have your attention?*

**lamb** /lăm/ *n.* a young sheep. *The lamb ran playfully in the field.*

**lamb**

**land** /lănd/ *v.* to set down on the ground or other surface. *This plane is able to land on water.*

**land•less** /lănd′ lĭs/ *adj.* having no property or land. *Because of the Great Depression, many people were left landless.*

**large** /lärj/ *adj.* (**larg•er, larg•est; large•ly** *adv.*) big. *A whale is large.*

**larg•er** /lärj′ ər/ *adj.* the comparative form of **large**. *Your bedroom is larger than mine is.*

**larg•est** /lärj′ ĭst/ *adj.* the superlative form of **large**. *That is the largest whale I have ever seen!*

**lat•er** /lā′ tər/ *adj.* (**late, lat•est**) coming or occurring a longer time after the correct or usual time. *We arrived at the party later than we wanted to arrive.*

**laugh** /lăf/ *v.* to make sounds with the voice that show amusement. *Everyone laughed at the funny movie.*

**laugh•ter** /lăf′ tər/ *n.* the noise of laughing. *Laughter filled the classroom during the puppet show.*

## Pronunciation Key

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | it**e**m, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | penc**i**l, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gall**o**p, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**launch** /lônch/ or /länch/ *v.* to start; to begin. *Our school will launch a cleaning and painting drive next week.*

**la•va** /lä′ və/ *n.* the hot, melted rock that comes from a volcano. *The lava flowed down the mountain.*

**law•ful** /lô′ fəl/ *adj.* obeying the law. *I am a lawful citizen in my community.*

**lay** /lā/ *v.* (**lays, laid, lay•ing**) **a.** put or placed. *You laid your book on the table.* **b.** produced eggs. *The hens laid three eggs each.*

**la•zy** /lā′ zē/ *adj.* (**laz•i•er, la•zi•est**) not wanting to work. *He was too lazy to help us.*

**lead**[1] /lēd/ *v.* (**leads, led, lead•ing**) to direct or show the way. *She will lead the hikers home.*

**lead**[2] /lĕd/ *n.* **a.** a soft mineral used in some pipes. *He put a weight made of lead on the fishing line.* **b.** graphite used to make the writing substance in a pencil. *My fingers had black smudges from the pencil lead.*

**lead•er** /lē′ dər/ *n.* one who leads. *The Scout troop needs a new leader.*

**leaf** /lēf/ *n.* (**leaves** *pl.*) a flat, green part of a plant or tree. *The caterpillar was eating a leaf.*

**learn•er** /lûr′ nər/ *n.* one who learns; a student. *A good learner listens carefully.*

**least** /lēst/ *adj.* smallest in size or amount. *Which game costs the least money?*

**leave** /lēv/ *v.* (**leaves, left, leav•ing**) to go away; to go from. *The train will leave in five minutes.*

**length** /lĕngkth/ *n.* the distance from end to end. *The length of the boat is forty feet.*

**length•en** /lĕngk′ thən/ or /lĕng′-/ *v.* to make or become longer. *This road has been lengthened since I last drove on it.*

**-less** an English suffix that means "without," used to form adjectives: *endless.*

**let•ter car•ri•er** /lĕt′ ər kăr′ ē ər/ *n.* a person who delivers mail. *Our letter carrier delivers our mail every day at ten o'clock.*

**light•en** /līt′ n/ *v.* **a.** to make brighter; to add light to. *The new paint lightens the room.* **b.** to make less heavy. *Taking out the books lightened my suitcase.*

**light•ly** /līt′ lē/ *adv.* **a.** with little weight or pressure. *Lightly press the button to ring the doorbell.* **b.** in a worry-free manner. *She took the news lightly.*

**limb** /lĭm/ *n.* a branch of a tree. *We hung the swing from a strong limb.*

**lis•ten** /lĭs′ n/ *v.* to pay attention; to try to hear. *The audience listened closely to the speaker.*

**lis•ten•er** /lĭs′ ə nər/ *n.* one who listens. *A good listener remembers what is said.*

**loaf** /lōf/ *n.* (**loaves** *pl.*) the shape of bread in which each one is baked as one piece. *The bakery sells them a loaf of rye bread every day.*

loaf

**loan** /lōn/ *n.* an amount of money lent or borrowed. *Banks charge interest on loans.*

➤ **Loan** sounds like **lone**.

**lo•cate** /lō′ kāt/ or /lō kāt′/ v. (**lo•cates, lo•cat•ed, lo•cat•ing**) **a.** to find the position or place of. *Can you locate your town on the map?* **b.** to establish in a certain place. *The store is located in the shopping center.*

**lone** /lōn/ *adj.* alone; single. *A lone cloud floated in the blue sky.*

➤ **Lone** sounds like **loan**.

**lose** /lōōz/ *v.* (**los•es, lost, los•ing**) **a.** to be unable to find; to misplace. *Put the key in your pocket so you won't lose it.* **b.** to fail to win. *She lost the race by less than a second.*

**love•less** /lŭv′ lĭs/ *adj.* having no kindness or love. *The loveless kitten was adopted by the caring family.*





**lug•gage** /lŭg′ ĭj/ *n.* baggage; the suitcases, trunks, bags, or boxes that are taken on a trip. *We took extra luggage for our long vacation.*

**lunch** /lŭnch/ *n.* meal eaten at midday. *I had soup and salad for lunch.*

**-ly** a Latin suffix, used to form adverbs, that means: **a.** like; in the manner of: *finally.* **b.** at certain intervals: *weekly.*

**ma•gi•cian** /mə jĭsh′ ən/ *n.* one who performs magic for the entertainment of others. *The magician performed amazing tricks.*

**mail** /māl/ *n.* packages, letters, postcards, etc., that are delivered through the post office. *Has the mail come yet?*

**mail•box** /māl′ bŏks′/ *n.* (**mail•box•es** *pl.*) **a.** a public box into which people put items to be delivered by mail. *The contents of a mailbox are taken to the post office.* **b.** a private box for a home or business to which mail is delivered. *Check the mailbox to see if you got a letter.*

**ma•jor** /mā′ jər/ *adj.* larger; greater; primary. *He played a major role in the project's success.*

**make-be•lieve** /māk′ bĭ lēv/ *adj.* playful or fanciful. *Some children talk to make-believe friends.*

**ma•ple** /mā′ pəl/ *n.* a tree with hard wood and a thin sap that is sometimes used in making syrup and sugar. *Maples are grown for both beauty and shade.*

**Mar.** March.

**march** /märch/ *v.* (**march•es, marched, march•ing**) to walk with even, steady steps. *The band marched in the parade.*

**March** /märch/ *n.* the third month of the year. *The weather begins to warm up in March.*

**mark** /märk/ *v.* to make a visible sign on or by. *Mark the wrong answers with an "X."*

**mar•ket** /mär′ kĭt/ *n.* a place where things can be bought and sold. *A supermarket is a large, modern market.* (**mar•ket•a•ble** *adj.*)

**Mar•tin Lu•ther King Day** *n.* United States commemoration of the birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr., observed on the third Monday in January. *There's no school on Martin Luther King Day, so we can think about a great leader.*

**mas•ter** /măs′ tər/ *v.* to become skilled in. *It takes time and practice to master a foreign language.*

**may** /mā/ *v.* (**might**) **a.** to be allowed to. *May I be excused from the table?* **b.** to be possible that. *The package may arrive today.*

**May** /mā/ *n.* the fifth month of the year. *Flowers bloom in May.*

**may•be** /mā′ bē/ *adv.* perhaps. *Maybe he hasn't left the train yet, and we can still find him.*

**mean**[1] /mēn/ *v.* (**means, meant, mean•ing**) **a.** to intend. *I didn't mean to hurt her feelings.* **b.** to signify; to carry the meaning of. *The sign "+" means "plus."*

**mean**[2] /mēn/ *adj.* unkind; wicked. *The boy was mean to the other children who walked in his yard.*

**meant** /mĕnt/ *v.* past tense of **mean**.

**med•dle** /mĕd′ l/ *v.* (**med•dles, med•dled, med•dling**) to interest oneself in what is not one's concern; to interfere without being asked. *It isn't courteous to meddle in other people's affairs.*

**Me•mo•ri•al Day** *n.* a United States holiday on May 30, officially observed on the last Monday in May, to remember those members of the armed forces killed in war. Also called Decoration Day. *We watched the parade on Memorial Day.*

**-ment** a Latin suffix that means "the result of an action or process," used to form nouns: *amusement.*

**men•tion**[1] /mĕn′ shən/ *v.* to talk about briefly; to say something about. *She mentioned the new teacher, but she didn't tell me his name.*

**men•tion**[2] /mĕn′ shən/ *n.* a brief statement. *There wasn't even a mention of the fire in the newspaper.*

**men•u** /mĕn′ yo͞o/ *n.* a list of dishes that may be ordered (in a restaurant) or served. *The menu listed several tasty appetizers.*

**Mex•i•can**[1] /mĕk′ sĭ kən/ *adj.* of or from Mexico. *A sombrero is a Mexican hat.*

**Mex•i•can**[2] /mĕk′ sĭ kən/ *n.* one born or living in Mexico. *Many Mexicans visit the United States each year.*

**mice** /mīs/ *n.* plural of **mouse**.

**mid-** an English prefix that means "middle": *midday.*

**mid•day**[1] /mĭd′ dā′/ *n.* the middle of the day; noon. *The parade began at midday.*

**mid•day**[2] /mĭd′ dā′/ *adj.* in the middle of the day: *the midday meal.*

**mid•dle**[1] /mĭd′ l/ *n.* the point or part located at the same distance from each side or end; the center. *Your nose is in the middle of your face.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circus |

**mid•dle**[2] /mĭd′ l/ *adj.* occupying a central position. *His middle name is Michael.*

**might** /mīt/ *v.* past tense of **may**.

**mild** /mīld/ *adj.* **a.** not harsh; not severe; warm rather than cold. *We had a mild winter last year.* **b.** not sharp or biting to the taste. *We ordered mild sauce on our food.* (**mild•ness** *n.*)

**mi•nor** /mī′ nər/ *adj.* smaller; lesser; secondary. *Brian played a minor role, so he didn't have to learn many lines.*

**mis-** a Latin prefix that means "not, wrong, or less": *mislead.*

**miss** /mĭs/ *v.* (**mis•ses, missed, mis•sing**) fail to hit, reach, catch, or contact. *The dart will miss the target.*

➤ **Missed** sounds like **mist**.

**mist** /mĭst/ *n.* a fine spray of liquid, such as water or perfume. *The mist watered the vegetables at the grocery store.*

➤ **Mist** sounds like **missed**.

**moist** /moist/ *adj.* somewhat wet; damp. *The grass was still moist from the rain this morning.*

**mois•ten** /moi′ sən/ *v.* to make or become damp; to wet. *Moisten this cloth and use it to wipe the table.*

**mo•ment** /mō′ mənt/ *n.* **a.** an instant; a very brief period. *I saw him for a moment, but I lost sight of him in the crowd.* **b.** a specific point in time. *I called the moment I heard you were sick.*

**Mon.** Monday.

**Mon•day** /mŭn′ dē/ or /-dā′/ *n.* the second day of the week, coming after Sunday and before Tuesday. *Monday is the first school day in the week.* [Old English *monandæg,* the moon's day.]

**month** /mŭnth/ *n.* one of the twelve parts into which a year is divided. *We go to school for nine months of the year.*

**month•ly**[1] **/mŭnth′** lē/ *adj.* happening once a month. *Did you pay the monthly bills?*

**month•ly**[2] **/mŭnth′** lē/ *adv.* once each month. *This magazine is published monthly.*

**morn•ing** /môr′ nĭng/ *n.* the earliest part of the day, ending at noon. *We eat breakfast every morning.*

**mot** a Latin root that means "to move": *motion.*

**mo•tel** /mō **tĕl′**/ *n.* a hotel near a highway for people who are traveling by car. *We spent the night in a motel on our way to visit our cousins.*

**moth•er** /**mŭ*th′*** ər/ *n.* the female parent. *My mother likes to listen to me read.*

**mother**

**mo•tion**[1] **/mō′** shən/ *n.* **a.** the act of moving; movement. *The motion of the train made us sleepy.* **b.** a suggestion made at a meeting. *The motion was passed by the club members.*

**mo•tion**[2] **/mō′** shən/ *v.* to make a movement or a gesture. *The speaker motioned to us to sit down.*

**mount** /mount/ *v.* to climb onto; to get up on. *The rider mounted his horse and galloped away.*

**mouse** /mous/ *n.* (**mice** *pl.*) a small animal with white, gray, or brown fur, a long tail, and long, sharp front teeth. *The field mouse made a nest in the ground.*

**mouth** /mouth/ *n.* the opening in the head that contains the tongue and teeth and is used for taking in food and making sounds. *When you yawn, your mouth opens wide.*

**move•ment** **/mōōv′** mənt/ *n.* action; a change in position or location. *The children watched the slow movement of the snail across the sidewalk.*

**mov•ie** **/mōō′** vē/ *n.* (**mo•vies** *pl.*) the showing of motion pictures at a theater. *We saw Greg at the movies.*

**mul•ti•pli•ca•tion** /mŭl′ tə pli **kā′** shən/ *n.* the adding of a number a certain number of times. *Knowing your times tables will help you solve problems in multiplication.*

**mum•ble** **/mŭm′** bəl/ *v.* (**mum•bles, mum•bled, mum•bling**) to speak unclearly so that you are hard to understand. *If you mumble, no one will understand you.*

**mu•sic** **/myōō′** zĭk/ *n.* **a.** the art of making and combining sounds using rhythm, melody, and harmony. *Music is one of the fine arts.* **b.** the sounds made and combined in this way. *We can hear many kinds of music on the radio.* —***idiom.*** **music to your ears**. exactly what you want to hear.

**mu•si•cian** /myōō **zĭsh′** ən/ *n.* a person who composes or performs music. *The players in the orchestra are fine musicians.*

**nar•row** **/năr′** ō/ *adj.* **a.** not wide: *a narrow street.* **b.** close: *a narrow escape.*

**na•tion** **/nā′** shən/ *n.* a group of people living together under one government, who usually have many of the same customs and speak the same language. *The United States, Japan, and Sweden are nations.* (**na•tion•al•i•ty** *n.*)

**naugh•ty** **/nô′** tē/ *adj.* (**naugh•ti•er, naugh•ti•est**) behaving badly or mischievously. *The naughty students were punished for their behavior on the field trip.*

**near**[1] /nîr/ *adv.* not far away in time or distance. *The train drew near.*

**near**[2] /nîr/ *prep.* not far from. *The school is near my house, only a block away.*

**near•by** **/nîr′** bī′/ *adj.* not far off. *They live in a nearby town.*

**near•er** **/nîr′** ər/ *adj.* comparative form of **near**; being closer in time or distance than anyone or anything. *Your house is nearer the school than my house.*

**near•est** /**nîr′** ĭst/ *adj.* superlative form of **near**; being closer in time or distance than everyone or everything. *The library that is nearest the school is three miles away.*

**nee•dle** /**nēd′** l/ *n.* a thin, pointed steel tool used in sewing. *Can you thread a needle?*

**nei•ther**[1] /**nē′** *th*ər/ or /**nī′**-/ *pron.* not the one and not the other. *Neither of us was invited.*

**nei•ther**[2] /**nē′** *th*ər/ or /**nī′**-/ *conj.* also not. *If you're not going to the park, neither am I.*

**nei•ther**[3] /**nē′** *th*ər/ or /**nī′**-/ *adj.* not either. *Neither girl was tall enough for the part in the play.*

**neph•ew** /**nĕf′** yo͞o/ *n.* a son of a person's sister, brother, sister-in-law, or brother-in-law. *My nephew calls me Aunt Tracie.*

**-ness** an English suffix that means "a state or quality," used to form nouns: *softness.*

**nev•er** /**nĕv′** ər/ *adv.* not ever; not at any time. *Maria has never been late to school; she is always early.*

**news** /no͞oz/ or /nyo͞oz/ *n.* recent happenings reported in newspapers and over television and radio. *We read the news in the paper.*

**news•pa•per** /**no͞oz′** pā pər/ or /**nyo͞oz′**-/ *n.* a printed paper that contains news, advertisements, cartoons, etc. *My grandfather likes to work the crossword puzzles in the newspaper.*

**New York** /no͞o′ **yôrk′**/ or /nyo͞o′-/ *n.* a state in the eastern United States. *The state of New York has beautiful mountains and lakes.*

**no•bod•y** /**nō′** bŏd′ ē/ or /**nō′** bə dē/ *pron.* no one; no person. *Nobody is here at this time of day.*

**nor** /nôr/ *conj.* and not; not either. *There was neither milk nor fruit juice in the refrigerator.*

**north** /nôrth/ *n.* the direction to your right when you face the sunset. *Cold winds blow from the north.*

**Nov.** November.

**No•vem•ber** /nō **vĕm′** bər/ *n.* the eleventh month of the year. *November has thirty days.*

**o•bey** /ō **bā′**/ *v.* **a.** to follow the orders of. *Children obey their parents.* **b.** to act in agreement with; to carry out. *Good citizens obey the law.*

**Oct.** October.

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | **i**tem, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**Oc•to•ber** /ŏk **tō′** bər/ *n.* the tenth month of the year. *Many leaves change color in October.*

**of•ten** /**ô′** fən/ or /**ŏf′** ən/ *adv.* many times; frequently. *We often see our relatives during the holidays.*

**o•ri•ole** /**ôr′** ē ōl′/ or /**ōr′** ē ōl′/ *n.* a black and orange songbird. *The Baltimore oriole is Maryland's state bird.*

**oth•er•wise** /**ŭ*th*′** ər wīz′/ *adv.* in a different way or manner. *He thought he was right; she thought otherwise.*

**ought** /ôt/ *v.* should. *You ought to wear a coat on a cold day like this.*

**-ous** an English suffix that means "full of or having": *wondrous.*

**out•doors**[1] /out **dôrz′**/ or /**-dōrz′**/ *n.* the area outside a house or building; the open air. *Campers enjoy the outdoors.*

**out•doors**[2] /out **dôrz′**/ or /**-dōrz′**/ *adv.* outside a building; out in the open air. *We played outdoors on the first sunny day of spring.*

**o•ver** /**ō′** vər/ *prep.* **a.** above. *The reading lamp is over the bed.* **b.** on top of. *Put the cover over the basket.* **c.** more than. *The flight took over three hours.*

**own•er** /**ō′** nər/ *n.* one who owns or possesses something. *Who is the owner of this plaid jacket?*

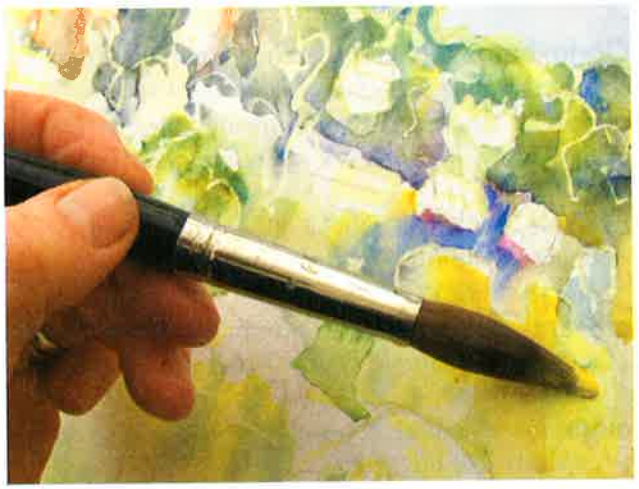
**ox** /ŏks/ *n.* (**ox•en** *pl.*) an adult bull. *The ox pulled the cart.*

**pack•age** /păk′ ĭj/ *n.* a wrapped box; a parcel. *How much will it cost to mail this package?*

**page**[1] /pāj/ *n.* one side of a sheet of paper in a book, magazine, newspaper, or letter. *Kurt knew from the first page that he would like the book.*

**page**[2] /pāj/ *v* (**pag•es, paged, pag•ing**) to summon a person in a crowd. *Will you please page my mother in the store?*

**paint** /pānt/ *v.* **a.** to cover a surface with paint. *They painted the fence.* **b.** to make a picture with paints. *Ms. Lindquist paints landscapes in her spare time.*



**paint**

**paint•er** /pān′ tər/ *n.* **a.** a person who paints pictures; an artist. *Some painters make abstract designs.* **b.** a person whose job is painting buildings or furniture. *The painter stood on a ladder to paint the house.*

**pa•per** /pā′ pər/ *n.* **a.** a material made in thin sheets of pulp, from wood or rags. *The pages of this book are made of paper.* **b.** a newspaper. *Have you seen the comics in today's paper?* **c.** a written article; a report. *The teacher asked us to write a paper about the moon.*

**par•don** /pär′ dn/ *v.* to forgive or excuse. *Pardon me for disturbing you.*

**par•ent** /păr′ ənt/ *n.* a father or a mother. *Either parent may write a note excusing an absence.*

**part** /pärt/ a Latin root that means "section or piece": *apart.*

**part•ly** /pärt′ lē/ *adv.* in part; not completely. *My test is partly finished.*

**pass**[1] /păs/ *v.* **a.** to go by. *They pass the fire station on the way to school.* **b.** to hand over; to give; to send. *Please pass the salad.* **c.** to succeed in. *The entire fourth grade passed the test.*

**pass**[2] /păs/ *n.* **a.** a written note; a permit. *Did the teacher sign your pass?* **b.** a narrow road through mountains. *We saw snow at the top of the pass.*

**passed** /păst/ *v.* past tense of **pass**.

➤ **Passed** sounds like **past**.

**pas•sen•ger** /păs′ ən jər/ *n.* a person traveling in, but not operating, a vehicle. *Each passenger is allowed one piece of carry-on luggage.*

**past**[1] /păst/ *n.* the time that has gone by. *In the distant past, dinosaurs lived on the earth.*

➤ **Past** sounds like **passed**.

**past**[2] /păst/ *adj.* gone by; previous. *In the past month we had three inches of rain.*

➤ **Past** sounds like **passed**.

**pa•tient**[1] /pā′ shənt/ *adj.* able to put up with pain, trouble, delay, etc., without complaint. *The passenger was patient despite the traffic.*

**pa•tient**[2] /pā′ shənt/ *n.* a person under the care of a doctor. *The doctor sees her patients in the morning.*

**pave** /pāv/ *v.* (**paves, paved, pav•ing**) to cover a road, street, etc., with a smooth, hard surface. *The dirt road will be paved next week.*

**pave•ment** /pāv′ mənt/ *n.* the surface of a road or a street made by paving. *Some pavement is made with crushed rock, clay, and tar.*

**pay•ment** /pā′ mənt/ *n.* an amount of money paid. *Most people who rent a house or an apartment make a monthly payment to the landlord.*

**peace** /pēs/ *n.* freedom from war. *The world's goal is to have peace.*

**peace•ful** /pēs′ fəl/ *adj.* **a.** calm; quiet. *Early morning hours are peaceful.* **b.** not liking arguments or quarrels; liking peace. *Neutral nations are peaceful.*

**peach** /pēch/ *n.* (**peach•es** *pl.*) a sweet, juicy fruit with a large, rough stone in the center. *When ripe, a peach has a fuzzy, pinkish-yellow skin.*

**pea•nut but•ter** /pē′ nŭt bŭt′ ər/ *n.* a food made from roasted peanuts ground into a spreadable paste. *I like peanut butter on bananas.*

**peb•ble** /pĕb′ əl/ *n.* a small stone. *Pebbles have been worn smooth by water running over them.*

**peo•ple** /pē′ pəl/ *n.* human beings; persons; men, women, boys, and girls. *People of all ages attended the fair.*

**per•fect** /pûr′ fĭkt/ *adj.* **a.** having no flaws or errors; exactly right. *Charlene turned in a perfect paper in science.* **b.** excellent; unusually good. *Today is a perfect day for swimming.*

**per•haps** /pər hăps′/ *adv.* possibly, but not certainly; maybe. *Perhaps you should bring an umbrella, just in case it rains.*

**per•son** /pûr′ sən/ *n.* a human being; a man, woman, boy, or girl. *This elevator can hold six persons.*

**pe•so** /pā′ sō/ *n.* (**pe•sos** *pl.*) the currency used in some Latin American countries. *I found a peso on the ground in Mexico.*

**pheas•ant** /fĕz′ ənt/ *n.* (**pheas•ants** or **pheas•ant** *pl.*) a large, brightly colored bird with a long tail. *The ring-necked pheasant is South Dakota's state bird.*

**pie** /pī/ *n.* (**pies** *pl.*) baked goods made of fruit, meat, or pudding within a crust. *My mother made a pie for the holidays.*

**piece** /pēs/ *n.* a part; a segment. *Would you like a piece of my orange?*

**pil•low** /pĭl′ ō/ *n.* a support used for the head in resting or sleeping; a cushion. *Do you like to sleep on a feather pillow?*

**pitch•er** /pĭch′ ər/ *n.* a player in a baseball game who throws the ball to a person at bat. *The pitcher threw a curve ball for a strike.*

**place•ment** /plās′ mənt/ *n.* location; arrangement. *The placement of the flowers added the perfect touch to the dinner table.*

**plaid**[1] /plăd/ *n.* a pattern of checks or squares formed by stripes crossing at right angles. *Scottish clans have distinctive plaids, which they call tartans.* [Scottish Gaelic *plaide.*]

**plaid**[2] /plăd/ *adj.* having such a pattern: *a plaid scarf.*

**play•er** /plā′ ər/ *n.* **a.** a person who plays a game. *Beth is the shortest player on her soccer team.* **b.** a person who plays a musical instrument. *A guitar player is called a guitarist.*

**play•ful** /plā′ fəl/ *adj.* full of fun and enjoyment. *The baby was playful in his bath.*

**pleas•ant** /plĕz′ ənt/ *adj.* **a.** delightful; pleasing: *a pleasant vacation.* **b.** fair and warm: *a pleasant day.* **c.** agreeable; friendly: *pleasant teachers.*

**pleas•ure** /plĕzh′ ər/ *n.* **a.** joy; delight; satisfaction. *Her pleasure in meeting the famous guitarist showed on her face.* **b.** something that gives enjoyment or satisfaction. *Going to the zoo was a pleasure for the class.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | it**e**m, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | penc**i**l, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gall**o**p, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**plow**[1] /plou/ *n.* a tool used in farming for turning up soil. *Plows have sharp blades and are pulled by horses, oxen, or tractors.*

**plow**[2] /plou/ *v.* to work with a plow; to till. *Fields are plowed before crops are planted.*

**poach** /pōch/ *v.* (**poach•es, poached, poach•ing**) to cook in a simmering liquid. *I like to poach my eggs for breakfast.*

**po•em** /pō′ əm/ *n.* a verbal composition arranged so that it has rhythm and appeals to the imagination. *Not all poems rhyme.*

**po•et** /pō′ ĭt/ *n.* a person who writes poems. *Emily Dickinson was a famous American poet.*

**po•ny** /pō′ nē/ *n.* (**po•nies** *pl.*) a kind of horse that is small in size when fully grown. *Children ride a pony at an amusement park.*

**pool** /po͞ol/ *n.* a small body of still water. *After it rained, there was a pool of water in our front yard.*

**pop•corn** /pŏp′ kôrn/ *n.* (**pop•corn** *pl.*) kernels of corn that burst open when heated. *Do you like butter on your popcorn?*

**popcorn**

**port**[1] /pôrt/ or /pōrt/ a Latin root that means "to carry": *portable.*

**port**[2] /pôrt/ or /pōrt/ *n.* a town with a harbor where ships may dock. *Boston and New York are Atlantic ports.* b. *the left-hand side of a ship, boat, or airplane as one faces forward.* **Ships show a red light toward port at night.**

**pow•der** /pou′ dər/ *n.* a substance made of fine grains. *It's easy to grind chalk into a powder.*

**pow•er**[1] /pou′ ər/ *n.* great strength, force, or control. *The police have power to enforce the law.*

**pow•er**[2] /pou′ ər/ *v.* to supply with power. *The boat is powered by an engine.*

**pow•er•ful** /pou′ ər fəl/ *adj.* having great power; strong. *The king was a powerful ruler.*

**pow•er•less** /pou′ ər lĭs/ *adj.* having no strength or power; helpless. *The farmers were powerless against the drought.*

**pre-** a prefix that means **a.** before: *preschool.* **b.** in advance: *prepay.*

**pre•heat** /prē **hēt′**/ *v.* to heat beforehand. *Please preheat the oven before you put the potatoes in to bake.*

**pre•his•tor•ic** /prē′ hĭ **stôr′** ĭk/ or /-**stŏr′**-/ *adj.* having to do with the time before written history began. *Prehistoric paintings and tools have been found all over the world.*

**pre•paid** /prē **pād′**/ *v.* past tense of **prepay**.

**pre•pay** /prē **pā′**/ *v.* to pay beforehand. *The company will prepay the postage.*

**pre•plan** /prē′ **plăn**/ *v.* (**pre•plans, pre•planned, pre•plan•ning**) to think or organize beforehand. *We will preplan the party before we send invitations.*

**pre•re•cor•ded** /prē rĭ **kôrd′** əd/ *v.* recorded or taped in advance for later use. *We prerecorded this program to air over the holidays.*

**pre•school** /**prē′** skōōl′/ *n.* a place of learning before elementary school. *Children aged three to five may attend preschool.*

**Pres•i•dents' Day** *n.* a United States holiday on the third Monday in February to celebrate the birthdays of George Washington and Abraham Lincoln. *On Presidents' Day, we read about our country's leaders.*

**pre•slice** /prē **slīs′**/ *v.* (**pre•slic•es, pre•sliced, pre•slic•ing**) to cut beforehand. *Preslice the mushrooms before making a mushroom omelet.*

**pre•soak** /prē **sōk′**/ *v.* to soak beforehand. *Presoak the stained shirt before you wash it.*

**pre•test** /**prē′** tĕst′/ *n.* a test given beforehand to determine readiness. *If you already know the spelling words, you'll do well on the pretest.*

**pre•view** /**prē′** vyōō′/ *v.* to view or watch in advance. *We were invited to preview the art show.*

**price** /prīs/ *n.* the cost in money; the amount of money for which something is sold. *The price should be clearly labeled.*

**prin•ci•ple** /**prĭn′** sə pəl/ *n.* a basic fact; a rule upon which other rules are based: *the principles of science.*

➤ **Principle** sounds like **principal**.

**pro•fes•sor** /prə **fĕs′** ər/ *n.* a college teacher of the highest rank. *After Mr. Patel received his Ph.D., he became an assistant professor at the university.*

**prompt** /prŏmpt/ *adj.* (**prompt•er, prompt•est**) carried out or performed without delay. *We tipped the waiter well for his prompt service.*

**pub•lic** /**pŭb′** lĭk/ *adj.* **a.** for the people; used by people. *Public parks are open to all.* **b.** of the people: *public opinion.*

**pub•lish** /**pŭb′** lĭsh/ *v.* **a.** to prepare printed texts such as books or magazines for sale. *That company publishes a book we use in school.* **b.** to make known. *The newspaper published an account of the hearing.* [Latin *pūblicāre,* to make public.]

**pub•lish•er** /**pŭb′** lĭ shər/ *n.* a person or company whose business is to prepare, print, and sell books, magazines, newspapers, etc. *You will find the publisher's name on the second page in this book.*

**quail** /kwāl/ *n.* (**quail** or **quails** *pl.*) a chicken-like bird with brown feathers and a short tail. *We saw some quail in the woods near our house.*

**quaint** /kwānt/ *adj.* (**quaint•er, quaint•est**) attractive in an old-fashioned way. *The quaint cottage seemed to be taken right out of a storybook.* (**quaint•ness** *n.*)

**quake** /kwāk/ *v.* (**quakes, quaked, quak•ing**) to vibrate or shake. *The ground quaked beneath us during the mild earthquake.*

**quar•rel**[1] /**kwôr′** əl/ or /**kwŏr′**-/ *n.* an argument; a dispute. *The children had a quarrel about which program to watch.*

**quar•rel**[2] /**kwôr′** əl/ or /**kwŏr′**-/ *v.* to fight; to disagree, using angry words. *They quarreled about whose turn it was to bat.*

**quart** /kwôrt/ *n.* a liquid measure equal to two pints; one-quarter of a gallon. *My mother sent me to the store for a quart of milk.*

**quar•ter** /**kwôr′** tər/ *n.* a coin worth one fourth of a dollar, or twenty-five cents. *Two dimes and a nickel equal a quarter.*

**quartz** /kwôrts/ *n.* a mineral with hexagonal crystals. *Rose quartz is a pink-colored mineral used in jewelry.*

**queen** /kwēn/ *n.* **a.** a female ruler. *The queen issued a proclamation.* **b.** the wife of a king. *When she married the king, she became his queen.*

**ques•tion**[1] /**kwĕs′** chən/ *n.* **a.** a sentence that asks something. *"What time is it?" is a question.* **b.** a problem. *The litter question will be discussed tonight.*

**ques•tion**[2] /**kwĕs′** chən/ *v.* (**ques•tions, ques•tioned, ques•tion•ing**) to ask, doubt, or inquire. *I question your facts.*

**quick** /kwĭk/ *adj.* fast; swift. *The rabbit made a quick leap into the bushes.* (**quick•ness** *n.*)

**quick•er** /**kwĭk′** ər/ *adj.* comparative form of **quick**; being faster or swifter than another. *A rabbit is quicker than a turtle.*

**quick•est** /**kwĭk′** ĭst/ *adj.* superlative form of **quick**; being the fastest or swiftest of anyone or anything. *That pizza place has the quickest delivery of any pizza place in town.*

**qui•et** /**kwī′** ĭt/ *adj.* **a.** silent; still; having little noise. *The hum of the airplane was the only sound in the quiet night.* **b.** peaceful; calm. *Alice spent a quiet afternoon reading.*

**qui•et•er** /**kwī′** ĭt ər/ *adj.* comparative form of **quiet**; being more still or peaceful than another. *It is quieter out here at the lake than it is in the city.*

**qui•et•est** /**kwī′** ĭt ĭst/ *adj.* superlative form of **quiet**; being the most still or peaceful of anyone or anything. *The library is the quietest place in this whole school.*

**quill** /kwĭl/ *n.* a large, stiff feather or its hollow stem. *Quills were once used to make pens.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**quilt** /kwĭlt/ *n.* a bed cover made of layers of cloth and padding sewn together. *Grandma told me how she made the patchwork quilt.*

**quilt**

**quit** /kwĭt/ *v.* (**quits, quit** or **quit•ted, quit•ting**) **a.** to stop. *We'll quit raking leaves when it gets dark.* **b.** to leave; to give up. *Mr. Walters quit his job to start his own business.*

**quite** /kwīt/ *adv.* **a.** completely; entirely. *I haven't quite finished eating.* **b.** really; truly. *His drawings are quite good.*

**quiv•er** /**kwĭv′** ər/ *v.* to shake or move with a slight trembling motion. *I can see how cold you are by the way you quiver!*

**quiz** /kwĭz/ *n.* (**quiz•zes** *pl.*) a brief test. *I missed two questions on the science quiz.*

**quote**[1] /kwōt/ *v.* (**quotes, quot•ed, quot•ing**) to repeat or refer to a passage from a story or poem. *Justin quoted a line from the poem in his essay.*

**quote**[2] /kwōt/ *n.* a quotation; a passage repeated from a story or a poem. *Quotes usually appear inside quotation marks.*

**quo•tient** /**kwō′** shənt/ *n.* the result obtained when one number is divided by another. *If you divide 16 by 2, the quotient is 8.*

**rac•er** /**rā′** sər/ *n.* one that races or takes part in a race. *The fastest racer came in first in the relay.*

**ra•di•o** /**rā′** dē ō/ *n.* **a.** a way of sending sounds from one place to another by electromagnetic waves. *Before radio was discovered, messages were sent over wires.* **b.** a device for receiving such sounds. *Rita heard the election results on her radio.*

**rail** /rāl/ *n.* **a.** a bar of wood or metal. *She sat on the top rail of the fence.* **b.** railroad. *Send this package by rail.*

**rain•bow** /**rān′** bō′/ *n.* a curved band of colored light in the sky, caused by the rays of the sun passing through drops of rain, mist, or spray. *We saw a rainbow where the waves broke against the rocks.*

**rainbow**

**range** /rānj/ *v.* (**rang•es, ranged, rang•ing**) **a.** to extend or vary within certain limits. *The stories in this book range from sad to funny.* **b.** to travel over; to wander through. *Giraffes range the plains of Africa.*

**rare** /râr/ *adj.* not often found or seen. *My uncle saves rare postage stamps.*

**rath•er** /**răth′** ər/ *adv.* **a.** somewhat. *The baby is rather tired after the long ride.* **b.** more readily; more gladly. *I would rather stay inside today.*

**rat•tle** /**răt′** l/ *v.* (**rat•tles, rat•tled, rat•tling**) **a.** to make a number of short, sharp sounds. *The windows rattle when the wind blows.* **b.** to move with short, sharp sounds. *The old car rattled over the bumpy road.* —***idiom.*** **rattle a cage**. to annoy.

**ra•zor** /**rā′** zər/ *n.* a tool for cutting or shaving, often used for hair. *My dad uses a razor to shave every morning.*

**re-** a Latin prefix that means: **a.** "again": *rebuild.* **b.** "back": *recall.*

**reach** /rēch/ *v.* **a.** to stretch out one's hand or arm. *Joel reached for the book on the top shelf.* **b.** to extend to. *The old road reaches the river and stops.*

**read** /rēd/ *v.* (**reads, read, read•ing**) to decode the meaning of (written or printed characters, words, or sentences). *I can't read your writing.*

**read•er** /**rē′** dər/ *n.* a person who reads. *The teacher chose Kathy to be the reader of our lunchtime story this week.*

**read•y** /**rĕd′** ē/ *adj.* (**read•i•er, read•i•est; read•i•ly** *adv.*) **a.** prepared. *We are ready for school.* **b.** willing. *My older brother is always ready to help me with my homework.*

**rear**[1] /rîr/ *n.* the back part. *We stood in the rear of the room.* —***idiom.*** **bring up the rear**. to be the last in line.

**rear**[2] /rîr/ *adj.* at or of the back. *Use the rear entrance.*

**rear**[3] /rîr/ *v.* to rise on the hind legs. *The horse reared suddenly and the rider fell off.*

**rear**[4] /rîr/ *v.* (**rears, reared, rear•ing**) to care for (children or a child) during the early stages of life. *They promised to rear their adopted children as their own.*

**rea•son**[1] /**rē′** zən/ *n.* **a.** a cause or explanation. *Your parents will write the reason for your absence.* **b.** logic; the power to think. *Use reason to solve the problem.*

**rea•son**[2] /**rē′** zən/ *v.* to think in a sensible way; to use logic. *See if you can reason out the meaning of the word.*

**re•build** /rē **bĭld′**/ *v.* (**re•builds, re•built, re•build•ing**) to build again. *They are planning to rebuild the old school.*

**re•check** /rē **chĕk′**/ *v.* to check again. *After he finished the test, Pedro went back and rechecked his answers.*

**re•claim** /rĭ **klām′**/ or /rē-/ *v.* **a.** to restore to a usable condition. *We can reclaim land used for mining and set up a nature preserve.* **b.** to claim back; to ask for the return of. *They reclaimed their furniture from storage.* (**rec•la•ma•tion** *n.*)

**re•cord**[1] /rĭ **kôrd′**/ *v.* **a.** to keep an account of. *The story of our country's beginning is recorded in history.* **b.** to put sounds on a magnetic tape, phonograph record, or compact disc.

**re•cord**[2] /**rĕk′** ərd/ *n.* **a.** an account of facts or events. *The secretary keeps the club's records.* **b.** the best performance. *Who holds the record for the race?* **c.** a thin disc used on a phonograph to produce sound.

**re•cov•er** /rĭ **kŭv′** ər/ *v.* **a.** to get back. *The police recovered the stolen goods.* **b.** to regain health. *Tracy recovered quickly after her illness.*

**red•der** /**rĕd′** ər/ *adj.* (**red, red•dest**) having more red than something else. *Her hair is redder than his.*

**red•dest** /**rĕd′** ĭst/ *adj.* having the most red of anyone or anything else. *That cardinal is the reddest bird I have ever seen.*

**re•fill** /rē **fĭl′**/ *v.* to fill again; to replenish. *Please refill the soap dispenser because it is empty.*

**re•form** /rĭ **fôrm′**/ *v.* to make better by correcting or removing faults. *We discussed how to reform the old rules.*

**re•frain**[1] /rĭ **frān′**/ *v.* (**re•frains, re•frained, re•frain•ing**) to hold oneself back from doing something. *I try to refrain from gossiping.*

**re•frain**[2] / rĭ **frān′**/ *n.* a phrase, verse, or group of verses repeated throughout a song or poem. *The song's refrain is stuck in my head.*

**re•fresh** /rĭ **frĕsh′**/ *v.* to make fresh again; to revive; to renew. *The cool lemonade refreshed us after our hike.*

**re•gain** /rē **gān′**/ *v.* to get back again. *He will regain consciousness after the medicine has worn off.*

**re•group** /rē **grōōp′**/ *v.* to arrange differently; to put into a new grouping. *You must sometimes regroup numbers before you can subtract.*

**re•heat** /rē **hēt′**/ *v.* to heat again. *Dad reheated some leftovers for dinner.*

**rein•deer** /**rān′** dîr′/ *n.* (**rein•deer** or **rein•deers** *pl.*) an animal with antlers that resembles a caribou.

**re•lay**[1] /**rē′** lā/ or /rĭ **lā′**/ *v.* (**re•layed, re•lay•ing, re•lays**) to take and pass along to another person or place. *Will you relay a message to Joan when you see her?*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**re•lay**[2] /**rē′** lā/ *n.* **a.** a relay race. *Our team finished second in the relay race.* **b.** a division of a relay race. *Kara is training for the mile distance team relay.*

**relay**

**re•ly** /rĭ **lī′**/ *v.* (**re•lies, re•lied, re•ly•ing**) to depend on. *Many who are visually impaired rely on guide dogs to help them travel safely.*

**re•main** /rĭ **mān′**/ *v.* **a.** to continue without change; to stay. *The nurse reported that the patient's condition remained good.* **b.** to be left over. *After the picnic only a few sandwiches remained.*

**re•name** /rē **nām′**/ *v.* (**re•names, re•named, re•nam•ing**) to call by a different name; to give a new name to. *We can rename one ten as ten ones.*

**re•or•der** /rē **ôr′** dər/ *v.* to order again. *The product was damaged, so I need to reorder it.*

**re•peat** /rĭ **pēt′**/ *v.* **a.** to say again. *Will you repeat the question, please?* **b.** to say from memory. *Tomorrow each of you will be asked to repeat this poem.*

**re•play** /rē′ plā′/ *n.* something shown again on television, especially an exciting part of a sporting event. *After watching the replay, the referee changed his call.*

**re•ply**[1] /rĭ plī′/ *n.* (**re•plies** *pl.*) an answer. *I did not hear his reply because he spoke so softly.*

**re•ply**[2] /rĭ plī′/ *v.* (**re•plies, re•plied, re•ply•ing**) to give an answer; to respond. *She replied to my letter immediately.*

**re•port**[1] /rĭ pôrt′/ or /-pōrt′/ *n.* a detailed written or spoken account. *The newspaper report of the election listed the winners.*

**re•port**[2] /rĭ pôrt′/ or /-pōrt′/ *v.* to give an account or statement of. *The president of the company reported that sales had increased.*

**re•port•er** /rĭ pôr′ tər/ or /-pōrt′-/ *n.* a person who gathers news for radio, television, or newspapers. *A reporter interviewed the candidates.*

**re•read** /rē rēd′/ *v.* (**re•reads, re•read, re•read•ing**) to read again. *I often reread my favorite books.*

**rest•ful** /rĕst′ fəl/ *adj.* offering rest, peace, or quiet. *My aunt finds sewing restful after a busy day.*

**rest•ful•ness** /rĕst′ fəl nĭs/ *n.* the condition of having peace and quiet. *The restfulness was much needed after such a busy week!*

**rest•less** /rĕst′ lĭs/ *adj.* impatient; unable to be still. *The small children grew restless after the long delay.*

**re•turn** /rĭ tûrn′/ *v.* **a.** to come or go back. *We will return after the game is over.* **b.** to bring, send, or give back. *Return the book when you have finished reading it.*

**re•view** /rĭ vyōō′/ *v.* to study again; to go over. *She reviewed the chapter before she took the test.*

**re•write** /rē rīt′/ *v.* (**re•writes, re•wrote, re•writ•ten, re•writ•ing**) to write again. *The teacher asked us to rewrite our book reports, after correcting the spelling and punctuation.*

**ridge** /rĭj/ *n.* **a.** a narrow, raised line or strip; a crest. *Corduroy is a type of cloth that has ridges.* **b.** a long, narrow hill or mountain. *The sun sank behind the ridge.*

**right** /rīt/ *adj.* **a.** just; good. *Obeying the law is the right thing to do.* **b.** correct; true; accurate. *Abby's answers were all right.* (**right•ness** *n.*)

**rig•id** /rĭj′ ĭd/ *adj.* very stiff; not able to be bent. *A cast holds a broken arm in a rigid position so it can heal.*

**rise**[1] /rīz/ *v.* (**ris•es, rose, ris•en, ris•ing**) **a.** to get up. *He rose from his chair to greet us.* **b.** to move upward; to ascend. *We saw the balloon rise over the heads of the crowd.*

**rise**[2] /rīz/ *n.* an increase in height or amount. *The store announced a rise in prices.*

**role** /rōl/ *n.* a part or a character in a play. *Who will play the role of Peter Pan?*

➤ **Role** sounds like **roll**.

**roll** /rōl/ *v.* **a.** to move by turning over and over. *The ball rolled down the hill.* **b.** to wrap something around itself. *She rolled the yarn into a ball and put it in a drawer.*

➤ **Roll** sounds like **role**.

**rough** /rŭf/ *adj.* **a.** not smooth or even. *The car bounced and rattled over the rough road.* **b.** harsh; violent; not gentle. *The apples were bruised by rough handling.*

**round** /round/ *adj.* **a.** shaped like a ball. *The earth is round.* **b.** shaped like a circle. *Our swimming pool is square, but theirs is round.* (**round•ness** *n.*)

**roy•al** /roi′ əl/ *adj.* having to do with kings and queens. *The king and queen live in the royal palace.*

**rub•ber** /rŭb′ ər/ *n.* elastic material used in products such as tires, containers, and rubberbands. *We have rubber tires on the car.*

**rule** /rōōl/ *n.* **a.** a law; a regulation. *Always obey the school safety rules.* **b.** an instruction; a direction. *The rules describe how to play the game.* ***—idiom.*** **rule the roost**. be in charge.

**rum•mage** /rŭm′ ĭj/ *v.* (**rum•mag•es, rum•maged, rum•mag•ing**) to search for something by moving things around. *The hidden camera caught the thief trying to rummage around the office.*

**run•ner** /rŭn′ ər/ *n.* one who runs. *The runners were very tired after the race.*

**runner**

**Rus•sia** /rŭsh′ ə/ *n.* a large country in eastern Europe and northern Asia. *Russia was the largest republic in the former U.S.S.R.*

**Rus•sian**[1] /rŭsh′ ən/ *adj.* of or from Russia. *Borscht is a Russian soup.*

**Rus•sian**[2] /rŭsh′ ən/ *n.* **a.** one born or living in Russia. *Russians must dress warmly in winter.* **b.** the language of Russia. *Russian uses a different alphabet from English.*

**sad•der** /săd′ ər/ *adj.* (**sad, sad•dest**) more unhappy than someone else. *I am sadder about losing the game than I thought I would be.*

**sad•ness** /săd′ nĭs/ *n.* sorrow; grief. *Tears can be an expression of sadness.*

**safe** /sāf/ *adj.* free from risk or harm. *The sidewalk is a safe place to walk.*

**saf•er** /sāf′ ər/ *adj.* (**safe, saf•est**) more protected from harm than something or someone else. *Wearing a seatbelt makes driving a car safer.*

**saf•est** /sāf′ ĭst/ *adj.* (**safe, saf•er**) most protected from harm. *Walking may be the safest mode of traveling.*

**said** /sĕd/ *v.* past tense and past participle of **say**. *I said I would not be in school today.*

**sam•ple**[1] /săm′ pəl/ *n.* a part that shows what the rest is like. *The store gave away free samples of the new soap.*

**sam•ple**[2] /săm′ pəl/ *v.* (**sam•ples, sam•pled, sam•pling**) to test; to try. *We sampled the cookies we had baked for the party.*

**Sat.** Saturday.

**Sat•ur•day** /săt′ ər dē/ or /-dā′/ *n.* the seventh day of the week, coming after Friday. *We have no school on Saturday.* [Old English *Sæternesdæg,* translated from Latin *dies Saturni,* Saturn's day.]

**say** /sā/ *v.* (**says, said, say•ing**) to utter out loud; pronounce. *Could you please say that more slowly?*

**scale**[1] /skāl/ *n.* a device or machine for weighing things. *According to the scale in the doctor's office, she weighed seventy pounds.* [Old Norse *skāl.*]

**scale**[2] /skāl/ *v.* (**scaled, scal•ing, scales**) to climb up or over. *The climbers used ropes to scale the cliff.*

**scare** /skâr/ *v.* (**scares, scared, scar•ing**) to frighten. *The sudden loud noise scared me.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**scowl** /skoul/ *n.* a facial expression of displeasure; a frown. *He made a scowl when he spilled his milk.*

**sea•son** /sē′ zən/ *n.* one of the four parts into which a year is divided. *Spring is my favorite season.*

**seat belt** /sēt′ bĕlt′/ *n.* a safety strap designed to hold a person securely in a seat. *The flight attendant asked the passengers to fasten their seat belts.*

**self** /sĕlf/ *n.* (**selves** *pl.*) individual. *Bess is finally acting like her old self again.*

**sell•er** /sĕl′ ər/ *n.* a person who sells; a vendor. *The flower seller had a stand on the street corner.*

➤ **Seller** sounds like **cellar**.

**sense•less** /sĕns′ lĭs/ *adj.* lacking sense; foolish or stupid. *It is senseless not to use sunscreen when going to the beach.*

**Sept.** September.

**Sep•tem•ber** /sĕp tĕm′ bər/ *n.* the ninth month of the year. *Many schools start in September.*

**serve** /sûrv/ *v.* **a.** to prepare and offer food. *We were served a delicious dinner.* **b.** to help others by performing a task. *Sarah will serve as club treasurer.*

**set•tle** /sĕt′ l/ *v.* **a.** to agree; to decide. *The class settled on Saturday as the day of the picnic.* **b.** to establish residence. *Their family settled in California years ago.*

**shad•ow** /shăd′ ō/ *n.* a dark shape made on a surface by something that blocks the light. *The afternoon sun casts a long shadow of the tree.* [Old English *sceadu,* shade, shadow.]

**share**[1] /shâr/ *n.* a part; a portion. *Todd always does his share of work.*

**share**[2] /shâr/ *v.* (**shares, shared, shar•ing**) to use together. *The brothers share the same room.*

**sharp•er** /**shär′** pər/ *adj.* (**sharp, sharp•est**) having a thinner edge or finer point suitable for cutting or piercing. *Some species of cactus have sharper spines than others.*

**sheep** /shēp/ *n.* (**sheep** *pl.*) a hoofed animal with a thick, woolly coat. *Farmers raise sheep both for meat and for wool.*

**shell** /shĕl/ *n.* the hard outer covering of certain animals. *Snails, turtles, and clams have shells.*

**shel•ter**[1] /**shĕl′** tər/ *n.* something that covers, protects, or shields. *The old barn served as a shelter from the storm.*

**shel•ter**[2] /**shĕl′** tər/ *v.* to protect; to give shelter to. *Our house shelters us from cold weather.* [Old English *scield,* "shield."]

**ship•ment** /**shĭp′** mənt/ *n.* goods sent or delivered to a certain place. *The store received a shipment of clothing from the manufacturer.*

**short•en** /**shôr′** tn/ *v.* (**short** *adj.*) to make short or shorter. *The sleeves are too long so I will shorten them.*

**shoul•der** /**shōl′** dər/ *n.* **a.** the part of the body between the neck and an arm. *The gym teacher said, "Shoulders straight!"* **b.** the edge of a road. *The truck driver pulled onto the shoulder.*

**show** /**shō**/ *v.* (**shows, showed, shown or showed, show•ing**) to point out; to cause to be seen. *Show me the picture you liked.*

**show•er** /**shou′** ər/ *n.* **a.** a short fall of rain. *During the afternoon there were three showers.* **b.** a bath in which water comes down in a spray. *I take a shower every morning.*

**shown** /shōn/ *v.* a form of **show**.

**shy** /shī/ *adj.* **a.** reserved; quiet. *After Josh made friends at his new school, he was no longer shy.* **b.** easily frightened. *A deer is shy.*

**sick•ness** /**sĭk′** nĭs/ *n.* (**sick•ness•es** *pl.*) **a.** illness; poor health. *Good nutrition helps prevent sickness.* **b.** a certain disease. *Chicken pox is usually a mild sickness.*

**sil•ent** /**sī′** lənt/ *adj.* **a.** quiet; still; with no sound or noise. *The morning was silent until the birds began to sing.* **b.** not said out loud. *The "e" in "rake" is silent.*

**sil•ver** /**sĭl′** vər/ *n.* a whitish precious metal. *Silver is used in making coins such as dimes and quarters.*

**sim•ple** /**sĭm′** pəl/ *adj.* **a.** easy to understand. *The simple questions did not take long to answer.* **b.** plain; bare; with nothing fancy added. *She chose a simple red dress.*

**sing•er** /**sĭng′** ər/ *n.* one who sings. *A choir is a group of singers.*

**sin•gle** /**sĭng′** gəl/ *adj.* one alone; only one. *A single orange was left in the box.*

**sis•ter** /**sĭs′** tər/ *n.* a girl or woman having the same parents as another person. *The two sisters were planning a surprise party for their parents' anniversary.*

**size** /sīz/ *n.* the physical measurements of an object. *Which size paintbrush do you need?*

**skat•er** /**skā′** tər/ *n.* a person who skates. *The skaters checked the ice before skating on the pond.*

**skill** /skĭl/ *n.* the ability to do something well as a result of practice. *His skill in playing the violin may someday make him famous.*

**skill•ful** /**skĭl′** fəl/ *adj.* displaying much skill; expert. *The skillful mason laid the brick quickly and perfectly.*

**skirt** /skûrt/ *v.* (**skirts, skirt•ed, skirt•ing**) pass around or avoid. *He will skirt the issue because he is uncomfortable talking about it.*

**sleep•less** /**slēp′** lĭs/ *adj.* not able to sleep; being without sleep. *After drinking a lot of caffeine, I was quite sleepless last night.*

**slight** /slīt/ *adj.* not big; small; slender. *Although it looks sunny, there's a slight chance it will rain later today.*

**slim•mer** /**slĭm′** ər/ *adj.* thinner or more slender than something or someone else. *Joe chose the slimmer book to read on vacation.*

**slim•mest** /**slĭm′** ĭst/ *adj.* thinnest or most slender of anyone or anything. *That giraffe has the slimmest neck in the entire herd.*

**smart** /smärt/ *adj.* intelligent; clever; quick in mind. *A smart dog can learn many tricks.*

**smell**[1] /smĕl/ *v.* to get the odor or scent of through the nose. *We could smell dinner cooking as we came in.*

**smell**[2] /smĕl/ *n.* an odor; a scent. *The smell of orange blossoms filled the air.*

**smooth•ness** /**smo͞oth′** nĭs/ *n.* the condition of having no rough parts. *I like the smoothness of leather couches.*

**snare** /snâr/ *v.* (**snares, snared, snar•ing**) to trap or to catch. *The ranger was hoping to snare a bear.*

**snug•gle** /snŭg′ əl/ *v.* (**snug•gles, snug•gled, snug•gling**) to lie or press together; to cuddle. *The puppies snuggled close to their mother to keep warm.*

**soap** /sōp/ *n.* a substance used for washing. *Use plenty of soap when you wash your hands.*

**soar** /sôr/ or /sōr/ *v.* to rise or fly high; to glide. *Eagles soar gracefully in the sky.*

➤ **Soar** sounds like **sore**.

**soar**

**soft•en** /sô′ fən/ or /sŏf′ ən/ *v.* to make or become soft. *Ice cream softens in the heat.* (**soft•ly** *adv.*)

**soft•ness** /sôft′ nĭs/ or /sŏft′-/ *n.* the state or condition of being soft. *The softness of the wool blanket made it pleasant to use.*

**some•one** /sŭm′ wŭn′/ or /sŭm′ wən/ *pron.* somebody; some person. *Someone ought to fix that front door.*

**some•thing** /sŭm′ thĭng/ *pron.* a certain thing that is not specifically named. *Give the dog something to eat.*

**some•times** /sŭm′ tīmz/ *adv.* once in a while; now and then. *The sun sometimes shines when it is raining.*

**son** /sŭn/ *n.* a male child. *The mother took her son to a baseball game.*

**sore** /sôr/ or /sōr/ *adj.* painful; tender when touched. *His foot was sore after he stubbed his toe.*

➤ **Sore** sounds like **soar**.

**sort** /sôrt/ *v.* to separate things into like groups. *The child can sort the blocks into two piles by color.*

**south** /south/ *n.* the direction to the left when a person faces the sunset. *A warm wind blew from the south.*

**Span•ish**[1] /spăn′ ĭsh/ *adj.* of or from Spain. *The flamenco is a Spanish dance.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circus |

**Span•ish**[2] /spăn′ ĭsh/ *n.* the language of Spain, Mexico, Central America, and most of South America. *Spanish is taught in many schools.*

**spare** /spâr/ *adj.* extra. *Every automobile should have a spare tire.*

**spark** /spärk/ *n.* **a.** a tiny particle of fire. *As the wood burned, it gave off bright sparks.* **b.** a brief, bright flash of light. *We saw the sparks of fireflies in the night.*

**spar•kle** /spär′ kəl/ *v.* (**spar•kles, spar•kled, spar•kling**) to glitter or shine; to flash. *Most diamonds will sparkle in the sun.*

**speak** /spēk/ *v.* (**speaks, spoke, spo•ken, speak•ing**) to talk; to say words. *Speak clearly so that we can understand you!*

**speak•er** /spē′ kər/ *n.* **a.** a person who speaks or delivers public speeches. *The speaker at tonight's meeting will discuss the election.* **b.** a device that transmits sound. *These speakers will help everyone hear the music.*

**speech** /spēch/ *n.* (**speech•es** *pl.*) a talk given in public. *The President made a speech on television.*

**speed**[1] /spēd/ *n.* **a.** swiftness; quickness. *An antelope has great speed.* **b.** the rate of movement. *The airplane flies at a speed of six hundred miles an hour.*

**speed**[2] /spēd/ *v.* (**speeds, sped** or **speed•ed, speed•ing**) to go fast. *We watched the train speed past.*

**spill**[1] /spĭl/ *v.* to run out; to flow over. *The juice spilled on the tablecloth.*

**spill**[2] /spĭl/ *n.* an act of spilling: an oil spill.

**spin•ach** /spĭn′ ĭch/ *n.* a leafy green vegetable. *Spinach provides iron, which a healthy body needs.*

**spoil** /spoil/ *v.* **a.** to ruin; to damage; to destroy. *The stain will spoil your shirt if you don't wash it out quickly.* **b.** to become rotten or not fit for use. *The meat spoiled when it was left in the hot sun.*

**spoke** /spōk/ *v.* past tense of **speak**.

**sport** /spôrt/ or /spōrt/ *n.* any game involving exercise; recreation. *Swimming is a common summer sport.*

**spout**[1] /spout/ *v.* to shoot out in a forceful stream or in spurts. *Whales spout water from their blowholes in order to breathe.*

**spout**[2] /spout/ *n.* a pipe or narrow opening through which liquid is discharged in a stream. *The water won't come out because the pump's spout is rusted.*

**spread** /sprĕd/ *v.* (**spreads, spread, spread•ing**) **a.** to open out; to unfold. *Spread out the map on the table.* **b.** to stretch out. *The bird spread its wings and flew away.*

**spring** /sprĭng/ *n.* the season of the year that begins about March 21 and ends around June 21. *The weather begins to get warm in the spring.*

**square**[1] /skwâr/ *n.* a rectangle with four equal sides. *A checkerboard is made up of squares.*

**square**[2] /skwâr/ *adj.* having four equal sides. *This room is square.*

**squash** /skwŏsh/ *n.* a fruit with a hard rind and edible flesh. *Zucchini is a type of squash.* [Narragansett *askútasquash.*]

**squeal**[1] /skwēl/ *n.* a sharp, high-pitched cry. *The squeals of the pigs got louder as they saw the farmer bringing their food.*

**squeal**[2] /skwēl/ *v.* to make a sharp, high-pitched cry. *The baby squealed with delight.*

**squeeze** /skwēz/ *v.* (**squeez•es, squeezed, squeez•ing**) to press together hard; to compress. *Squeeze the sponge so that all the water comes out.*

**squid** /skwĭd/ *n.* (**squids** or **squid** *pl.*) a marine animal that has ten arms, a long tapered body, and a fin on each side. *The giant squid can grow as long as 100 feet.*

**squint** /skwĭnt/ *v.* (**squint•ed, squint•ing**) to look at with partly opened eyes. *The sun was so bright we had to squint to see.*

**squirm** /skwûrm/ *v.* (**squirm•ed, squirm•ing**) to turn and twist the body. *We laughed to see the puppy squirm in the child's arms.*

**squir•rel** /skwûr′ əl/ *n.* a small rodent with a long bushy tail. *Squirrels eat nuts and live in trees.*

**squirrel**

**squirt** /skwûrt/ *v.* to come forth in a sudden, rapid stream from a narrow opening. *Be careful; the water may squirt out of the hose unexpectedly.*

**sta•di•um** /stā′ dē əm/ *n.* (**sta•di•ums** or **sta•di•a** *pl.*) a large, usually unroofed building with tiers of seats for spectators at sports events. *This football stadium will seat more than 100,000 people.*

**stake** /stāk/ *n.* a stick or post with a pointed end that can be pounded into the ground. *The tent will stand straight when we tie it to these stakes.*

➤ **Stake** sounds like **steak**.

**stare** /stâr/ *v.* (**stares, stared, star•ing**) to look at with a steady gaze. *Mei Li stared at the painting, fascinated by the bright colors.*

**sta•tion** /stā′ shən/ *n.* the place from which a service is provided or operations are directed. *The local radio station will broadcast the game.*

**sta•tion•ar•y** /stā′ shə nĕr′ ē/ *adj.* not moving. *I exercise on a stationary bike.*

**steak** /stāk/ *n.* a slice of meat or fish for cooking. *For dinner he ordered a steak, a baked potato, a salad, and a roll with butter.*

➤ **Steak** sounds like **stake**.

**steal** /stēl/ *v.* (**steals, stole, sto•len, steal•ing**) **a.** to take without permission. *He locked his bike so nobody would steal it.* **b.** to move quietly and secretly. *We decided to steal away before the play was over.*

➤ **Steal** sounds like **steel**.

**steam** /stēm/ *n.* the vapor into which water is changed by heating. *We could see steam rising from the iron.*

**steel** /stēl/ *n.* a strong metal made from iron by mixing it with carbon. *Steel is used for making strong tools.*

➤ **Steel** sounds like **steal**.

**steer**[1] /stîr/ *v.* to cause to move in the correct direction. *Use the handlebars to steer the bike.* —***idiom.*** **steer clear**. to avoid.

**steer**[2] /stîr/ *n.* a male of domestic cattle that is raised especially for beef. *They herded the steers into the corral.*

**still•ness** /**stĭl′** nĭs/ *n.* quiet; silence. *After the city noise, the stillness of the country was a relief.*

**stor•y** /**stôr′** ē/ or /**stōr′** ē/ *n.* (**stor•ies** *pl.*) a tale or account of an adventure or happening. *Mr. Lee told us a story about his grandfather.*

**straight•en** /**strāt′** n/ *v.* **a.** to make or become straight. *After miles of curving, the road began to straighten.* **b.** to put in order. *Straighten your room before dinner.*

**strange** /strānj/ *adj.* unusual; odd. *We were startled by the strange noise.*

**street** /strēt/ *n.* a road in a city or town. *This street is always crowded during rush hour.*

**stroll**[1] /strōl/ *v.* to walk slowly and easily. *We strolled through the park.*

**stroll**[2] /strōl/ *n.* a slow walk for pleasure. *Our stroll in the neighborhood was pleasant.*

**stroll**

**stu•dent** /**stōōd′** nt/ or /**styōōd′**-/ *n.* a person who studies or goes to school. *There are three hundred students in our school.*

**stum•ble** /**stŭm′** bəl/ *v.* to trip and almost fall. *Carlos stumbled over his sister's foot.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**style** /stīl/ *n.* **a.** a way of doing or making something. *Some authors have a simple style of writing.* **b.** fashion. *This year's style in dresses is different from last year's.*

**sub•head** /**sŭb′** hĕd′/ *n.* a less important heading or title. *Rosa's outline had three subheads under each of the two main headings.*

**suc•tion** /**sŭk′** shən/ *n.* a drawing in by removing part of the air. *The suction of the vacuum was not very strong.*

**suit•case** /**so͞ot′** kās′/ *n.* a usually rectangular bag used to hold clothes when a person travels. *I had to sit on my suitcase to close it after it was packed.*

**sum•mer** /**sŭm′** ər/ *n.* the warmest season of the year. *Summer comes between spring and fall.*

**Sun.** Sunday.

**Sun•day** /**sŭn′** dē/ or /-dā′/ *n.* the first day of the week. *Sunday comes before Monday.* [Old English *sunnerdæg*, translated from Latin *dies solis*, day of the sun.]

**sunk•en** /**sŭng′** kən/ *adj.* to be beneath the surface. *They found old coins underwater in the sunken ship.*

**sun•ni•er** /**sŭn′** ē ər/ *adj.* more exposed to or more abounding in sunshine. *We placed the plant in the sunnier room.*

**sup•ply** /sə **plī′**/ *v.* (**sup•plies, sup•plied, sup•ply•ing**) to provide; to furnish; to give. *Who will supply the lemonade for the picnic?* (**sup•pli•er** *n.*)

**sur•prise**[1] /sər **prīz′**/ *v.* (**sur•pris•es, sur•prised, sur•pris•ing**) to cause to feel wonder or delight; to astonish. *They surprised us by singing the song they had written.*

**sur•prise**[2] /sər **prīz'**/ *n.* something unexpected. *The flowers from Aunt Laura were a nice surprise.*

**sweat•er** /**swĕt'** ər/ *n.* a knitted garment worn on the upper part of the body. *Aunt Ellie is knitting me a new sweater.*

**sweater**

**sweat•shirt** /**swĕt'** shûrt'/ *n.* a heavy cotton pullover with long sleeves, often worn for exercise. *Grandpa wears a sweatshirt when he goes jogging.*

**sweet•en** /**swēt'** n/ *v.* (**sweet**) **a.** to make sweeter by adding sugar, honey, or some other sweetener. *She added honey to sweeten the tea.* **b.** to make more pleasant. *He tried to sweeten her mood by telling a joke.*

**swift** /swĭft/ *adj.* **a.** very fast: *a swift runner.* **b.** prompt: *a swift answer.*

**syl•la•ble** /**sĭl'** ə bəl/ *n.* a word or a part of a word that is pronounced as a unit. *We divide words into syllables to know where to hyphenate them at the end of a line.*

**ta•ble** /**tā'** bəl/ *n.* a piece of furniture that has legs and a smooth, flat top. *We eat supper at the kitchen table.*

**ta•ble•cloth** /**tā'** bəl klôth'/ or /-klŏth'/ *n.* a cloth used for covering a table. *Tony brushed the crumbs off the tablecloth.*

**tan•gle** /**tăng'** gəl/ *v.* (**tan•gles, tan•gled, tan•gling**) to intertwine or twist in a confused mass. *If you don't comb your hair, it will tangle.*

**tar•di•ness** /**tär'** dē nĭs/ *n.* slowness; lateness. *Steve's forgetfulness contributes to his tardiness.*

**tar•dy** /**tär'** dē/ *adj.* (**tar•di•er, tar•di•est**) late or delayed. *Our teacher requires us to be on time, not tardy.* (**tar•dies** *n., pl.*)

**taught** /tôt/ *v.* past tense of **teach**.

**teach** /tēch/ *v.* (**teach•es, taught, teach•ing**) to help to learn; to instruct. *Will you teach me how to play this game?*

**teach•er** /**tē'** chər/ *n.* a person who teaches. *Who is your piano teacher?*

**tear**[1] /târ/ *v.* (**tears, tore, torn, tear•ing**) to pull apart or into pieces. *Be careful not to tear the letter as you open the envelope.*

**tear**[2] /tîr/ *n.* a drop of liquid from the eye. *She stopped crying and wiped the tears from her face.* (**tear•ful** *adj.*, **tear•ful•ly** *adv.*)

**teeth** /tēth/ *n. pl.* more than one tooth. *Did you brush your teeth this morning?*

**tem•ple** /**tĕm'** pəl/ *n.* a building for religious worship. *The ancient Greeks built many temples.*

**term** /tûrm/ *n.* a period of time. *The winter school term seems long because there aren't many holidays.*

**terse** /tûrs/ *adj.* (**ters•er, ters•est**) short and brusque. *Her terse tone suggested she was upset about something.* (**terse•ly** *adv.*)

**test** /tĕst/ *n.* an examination or trial, often consisting of a series of questions or problems. *There were twenty problems on the arithmetic test.*

**Tex•as** /**tĕk'** səs/ *n.* a state in the south central United States. *Texas is the second-largest state in the United States.*

**thank•ful** /**thăngk'** fəl/ *adj.* feeling or showing gratitude; grateful. *She was thankful when I returned her lost purse.*

**thank•less** /**thăngk'** lĭs/ *adj.* not showing appreciation; ungrateful. *Be sure to write Uncle Jeff a thank-you note for his gift so you won't seem like a thankless person.*

**Thanks•giv•ing Day** /thăngks **gĭv'** ĭng dā'/ *n.* the fourth Thursday in November observed as a legal holiday in the United States celebrating the friendship between the Pilgrims and the Native Americans. *On Thanksgiving Day, my family comes to our house for dinner.*

**their** /*th*âr/ *adj.* of, belonging to, or relating to them. *Is that your cat or their cat?*

➤ **Their** sounds like **there**.

**there** /thâr/ *adv.* **a.** in or at that place. *Put the flowers over there.* **b.** to that place; into that place. *I went there last week.*

➤ **There** sounds like **their**.

**they're** they are.

**thick•en** /**thĭk'** ən/ *v.* to make heavier or thicker. *You can use flour to thicken gravy.*

**thick•ness** /**thĭk'** nĭs/ *n.* the condition of being heavy or thick. *The thickness of the paint made it difficult to apply.*

**thin** /thĭn/ *adj.* slender; not thick. *A sheet of paper is thin.*

**think** /thĭngk/ *v.* (**thinks, thought, think•ing**) to consider, ponder, or reflect in the mind. *I think I would like to go to college.*

**thin•ner** /**thĭn'** ər/ *adj.* comparative form of **thin**; being more slender than another. *Thread for sewing is thinner than string for kites.*

**thin•nest** /**thĭn'** əst/ *adj.* superlative form of **thin**; being the most slender of anyone or anything. *This pen makes the thinnest line of all my pens.*

**third base** /thûrd bās/ *n.* the base that must be touched third by a base runner in baseball. *The runner slid into third base.*

**thirst** /thûrst/ *n.* a desire for something to drink caused by a dry feeling in the mouth or throat. *The horses satisfied their thirst by drinking from a stream.* (**thirst•y** *adj.*, **thirst•i•ly** *adv.*)

**thor•ough** /**thûr'** ō/ *adj.* **a.** complete. *She did a thorough job.* **b.** careful and exact. *The police were thorough in examining the evidence.*

**though**[1] /thō/ *adv.* however. *You must admit, though, that she was partly right.*

**though**[2] /thō/ *conj.* in spite of the fact that; although. *Though it was getting late, we kept playing for a while longer.*

**thought**[1] /thôt/ *v.* past tense of **think**.

**thought**[2] /thôt/ *n.* **a.** the act or process of thinking. *She spent many hours in thought about the problem.* **b.** an idea, opinion, or belief. *Do you have any thoughts about how to improve our school?*

**thought•ful** /**thôt'** fəl/ *adj.* **a.** engaged in thought; serious; meditative: *a thoughtful mood.* **b.** having consideration for others. *She is thoughtful of her friends and never hurts their feelings.*

**thou•sand** /**thou'** zənd/ *n.* the next number after 999; 10 × 100; 1,000. *The figure for one thousand has four numerals.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | **th**in |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | **th**is |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | **wh**ich |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vi**s**ion |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | **a**bout, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | it**e**m, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | penc**i**l, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gall**o**p, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circ**u**s |

**threat** /thrĕt/ *n.* a sign of trouble, impending doom, or danger. *The threat of rain changed our plans for going swimming.*

**threw** /thro͞o/ *v.* (**throws, threw, thrown, throw•ing**) tossed or cast through the air. *The pitcher threw the ball to first base.*

**thun•der**[1] /**thŭn'** dər/ *n.* the loud noise caused by the violent expansion of air heated by lightning. *Thunder often comes before rain.* (**thun•der•ous** *adj.*)

**thun•der**[2] /**thŭn'** dər/ *v.* to make this noise. *When it began to thunder, we headed for home.*

**Thurs.** Thursday.

**Thurs•day** /**thûrz'** dē/ or /-dā/ *n.* the fifth day of the week, coming between Wednesday and Friday. *Our spring vacation begins on Thursday.* [Old English *dunresdæg,* Thor's day.]

**tick•et** /**tĭk'** ĭt/ *n.* a document that gives the owner the right to be admitted or to be served. *I forgot my movie ticket at home!*

**tick•le**[1] /**tĭk'** əl/ *n.* the act of tickling. *The tickle of the feather made me sneeze.*

**tick•le**[2] /**tĭk'** əl/ *v.* (**tick•les, tick•led, tick•ling**) **a.** to touch lightly to produce a shivering feeling and laughter. *She tickled me until I laughed.* **b.** to have this feeling. *His nose tickles when he has to sneeze.* —***idiom.*** **tickled pink**. to make happy.

**tight** /tīt/ *adj.* **a.** not loose; firm. *The knot was so tight that we couldn't untie it.* **b.** fitting very closely. *My old shoes are too tight.*

**tight•en** /**tīt'** n/ *v.* to make or become tighter. *Mother tightened her seat belt before driving away.*

**ti•ny** /tī′ nē/ *adj.* (**ti•ni•er, ti•ni•est**) very small; wee. *An ant is a tiny animal.* (**ti•ni•ness** *n.*)

**tire**[1] /tīr/ *v.* (**tired, tir•ing, tires**) to make weary or exhausted. *Exercising for a long time tires me.*

**tire**[2] /tīr/ *n.* an outer rim of rubber, often filled with air, that is fitted around the rim of a wheel. *I pumped air into my bicycle tire.* [Middle English *tyre,* covering for a wheel, from *tyr,* attire.]

**ti•tle** /tīt′ l/ *n.* the name of a book, movie, painting, etc. *When I had finished reading the story, I couldn't remember its title.*

**to•geth•er** /tə ***gĕth′*** ər/ *adv.* with each other; in one group. *We all walked to the game together.*

**touch** /tŭch/ *v.* to feel with the hand or other part of the body. *The builder touched the cement to see if it was still soft.*

**tough** /tŭf/ *adj.* strong; not easily torn or broken. *The rug is made of very tough materials.*

**tour•ist** /to͝or′ ĭst/ *n.* a person traveling for pleasure. *The tourists all took pictures of the castle.*

**to•ward** /tôrd/, /tōrd/, or /tə **wôrd′**/ *prep.* in the direction of. *We ran toward the shelter to get out of the rain.*

**tow•er** /tou′ ər/ *n.* a tall, narrow structure. *The bell tower stands next to the church.*

**trac•tor** /trăk′ tər/ *n.* a large machine on wheels, used for pulling trucks or farm equipment. *The farmer drove the tractor through the field.*

**tractor**

**trail•er** /trā′ lər/ *n.* a large vehicle pulled or hauled by a car, truck, or tractor. *We used a trailer attached to our car to move our furniture.*

**train•er** /trā′ nər/ *n.* a person that trains; a coach. *The team's trainer suggested everyone get a full night's rest before the big game.*

**tra•peze** /tră pēz′/ or /trə **pēz′**/ *n.* a short, horizontal bar suspended by ropes, used by acrobats. *The crowd gasped as the acrobat leapt from one trapeze to the next.*

**trea•son** /trē′ zən/ *n.* the act of betraying one's home country by aiding the enemy. *The jury found the spies guilty of treason.*

**treat•ment** /trēt′ mənt/ *n.* **a.** a way of handling. *Baby animals receive special treatment at the zoo.* **b.** anything used to treat something. *The doctor said that ice was the best treatment for my sprain.*

**trem•ble** /trĕm′ bəl/ *v.* (**trem•bles, trem•bled, trem•bling**) to shake or quiver. *I was so nervous that my hands trembled.*

**tri•an•gle** /trī′ ăng′ gəl/ *n.* a closed figure in which three straight lines form three angles. *There are 180 degrees in a triangle.*

**trick** /trĭk/ *n.* **a.** something done to deceive. *The phone call was just a trick to get me out of the room while they planned the surprise party.* **b.** an act that requires a special skill. *Seth taught his dog the trick of rolling over.*

**trou•ble** /trŭb′ əl/ *n.* **a.** something that causes worry or distress; difficulty. *The trouble with our car is that the motor won't run.* **b.** a bother; an extra effort. *It was no trouble to help her clean her room.*

**true** /tro͞o/ *adj.* right; accurate; not false. *It is true that ostriches cannot fly.*

**trust** /trŭst/ *v.* **a.** to believe in; to depend or rely on. *We trust the doctor to do what is best for us.* **b.** to expect; to assume. *I trust you have finished your homework.*

**truth** /tro͞oth/ *n.* **a.** that which agrees with the facts. *The truth is that we were wrong.* **b.** honesty. *Her apology had a feeling of truth.* —***idiom.*** **grain of truth**. partly true.

**tube** /to͞ob/ or /tyo͞ob/ *n.* a long, hollow cylinder used to carry or hold liquids and gases. *A drinking straw is a tube.*

**Tues.** Tuesday.

**Tues•day** /to͞oz′ dē/ or /-dā′/ or /**tyo͞oz′**-/ *n.* the third day of the week, coming after Monday. *Elections are usually held on a Tuesday.* [Old English *Tiwesdæg,* Tiu's day.]

**tu•lip** /to͞o′ lĭp/ or /tyo͞o′-/ *n.* a plant of the lily family that grows from a bulb and blooms in the spring. *Tulips have large cup-shaped flowers.*

**tulip**

**tu•na** /to͞o′ nə/ or /tyo͞o′ nə/ *n.* (**tu•na** or **tu•nas** *pl.*) a large fish. *The yellowfin tuna is a popular food.*

**tur•key** /tûr′ kē/ *n.* (**tur•keys** *pl.*) a large North American bird covered with thick feathers. *A turkey can weigh more than thirty pounds.* —***idiom.*** **talk turkey**. to speak frankly.

**U**

**um•pire** /ŭm′ pīr′/ *n.* a person who rules on the play of a game. *In baseball, the umpire calls the balls and strikes.*

**un-** a Latin prefix that means "not" or "the opposite of": *unafraid.*

**un•a•ble** /ŭn ā′ bəl/ *adj.* not able to do something. *I promised to keep a secret, so I am unable to tell you where we are going.*

**un•cer•tain** /ŭn sûr′ tn/ *adj.* not known beyond a doubt. *We were uncertain what time the train was supposed to arrive.*

**un•cle** /ŭng′ kəl/ *n.* **a.** the brother of one's father or mother. *I have two uncles on my mother's side.* **b.** the husband of one's aunt. *We visited our aunt and uncle last spring.*

**un•cov•er** /ŭn kŭv′ ər/ *v.* **a.** to remove the cover from. *Steam rose from the hot dish as Dad uncovered it.* **b.** to reveal or expose. *The truth was uncovered during the trial.*

**un•der•line** /ŭn′ dər līn′/ *v.* (**un•der•lines, un•der•lined, un•der•lin•ing**) to draw a line under. *Underline the part of the sentence that contains an error.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, item, pencil, gallop, circus |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | |

**un•e•qual** /ŭn ē′ kwəl/ *adj.* **a.** not the same; not equal: *unequal amounts.* **b.** poorly matched; unfair. *The race between the tortoise and the hare was an unequal contest.*

**un•fair** /ŭn fâr′/ *adj.* not fair; not honest or just. *Cheating is unfair.* (**un•fair•ness** *n.*)

**un•friend•ly** /ŭn frĕnd′ lē/ *adj.* (**un•friend•li•er, un•friend•li•est**) not friendly; hostile; mean. *The unfriendly boy sat by himself at the party.* (**un•friend•li•ness** *n.*)

**un•hap•py** /ŭn hăp′ ē/ *adj.* (**un•hap•pi•er, un•hap•pi•est; un•hap•pi•ly** *adv.*) not happy; sad; full of sorrow. *When Maria was unhappy, we tried to cheer her up.* (**un•hap•pi•ness** *n.*)

**un•kind** /ŭn kīnd′/ *adj.* not nice or friendly; mean. *It hurts my feelings when you say unkind things to me.* (**un•kind•ness** *n.*)

**un•known** /ŭn nōn′/ *adj.* not known; strange; unfamiliar. *A stranger is an unknown person.*

**un•lock** /ŭn lŏk′/ *v.* to undo a lock by turning a key. *Mr. Hughes unlocked the door and let us in.*

**un•luck•y** /ŭn lŭk′ ē/ *adj.* (**un•luck•i•er, un•luck•i•est; un•luck•i•ly** *adv.*) not lucky; disappointing. *It was unlucky that we missed the bus.*

**un•pack** /ŭn păk′/ *v.* to remove the contents of a suitcase or a package. *After we moved, it took a week to unpack all the boxes.*

**un•safe** /ŭn sāf′/ *adj.* not safe; dangerous. *Running into a crowded hallway is unsafe.*

**un•tie** /ŭn tī′/ *v.* (**un•ties, un•tied, un•ty•ing**) to loosen something that has been tied. *She untied the ribbon and opened the gift.*

**up•stairs** /ŭp′ stârz′/ *adv.* up the stairs; to a higher floor. *I went upstairs to bed.*

**up•stairs**[2] /ŭp′ stârz′/ *adj.* on a higher floor. *Did you clean the upstairs hall?*

**up-to-date** /ŭp′ tə dāt′/ *adj.* including any recent changes; current; modern. *This edition of the dictionary is the most up-to-date version.*

**use** /yo͞oz/ *v.* (**us•es, used, us•ing**) to put into service. *Use the cloth to dust the shelf.*

**used**[1] /yo͞ozd/ *v.* past tense of **use**.

**used**[2] /yo͞ozd/ *adj.* not new; owned by another person in the past. *A used bike costs less than a new one.*

**use•ful** /yo͞os′ fəl/ *adj.* of use; helpful. *She gave me some useful advice about studying for the test.*

**use•less** /yo͞os′ lĭs/ *adj.* of no use; serving no purpose. *My sled is useless in the summer.*

**vain** /vān/ *adj.* **a.** too proud of oneself. *After Elaine won the prize she became vain about her accomplishment.* **b.** not successful; useless. *I soon gave up my vain efforts to attract his attention.*

➤ **Vain** sounds like **vane** and **vein**.

**vane** /vān/ *n.* a device to show which way the wind is blowing. *The weather vane turns as the wind changes direction.*

➤ **Vane** sounds like **vain** and **vein**.

**vein** /vān/ *n.* one of the many branching tubes through which blood is carried to the heart from all parts of the body. *Can you see the veins in your arms?*

➤ **Vein** sounds like **vain** and **vane**.

**view** /vyo͞o/ *n.* **a.** what is seen; scene. *The view from the window by the beach is breathtaking.* **b.** opinion; idea. *His view was that we should change our plans.* —***idiom.*** **bird's eye view**. to see clearly from above.

**vil•lage** /vĭl′ ĭj/ *n.* a number of houses and buildings in an area that is smaller than a town. *Everyone knows everyone else in our village.*

**vin•e•gar** /vĭn′ ĭ gər/ *n.* a sour liquid produced from fermented liquids and used as a condiment or preservative. *Aunt Brenda likes to put oil and vinegar on her salad.*

**vi•sion** /vĭ′ zhən/ *n.* **a.** something that is or has been seen. *Jan was a vision of beauty in her costume.* **b.** the sense of sight. *He has perfect vision in both eyes.*

**vow•el** /vou′ əl/ *n.* **a.** a sound made with the voice when the breath is allowed to pass out of the mouth freely. *The sound of "o" in "go" is a vowel.* **b.** any of the letters that stand for such a sound. *The most common vowels are a, e, i, o, and u.*

**waist** /wāst/ *n.* the narrow part of the body between the ribs and the hips. *Belts are worn around the waist.*

➤ **Waist** sounds like **waste**.

**Wash•ing•ton** /wŏsh′ ĭng tən/ or /wôsh′ / *n.* a state in the northwestern United States. *Washington is known for its delicious apples.*

**waste** /wāst/ *v.* (**wastes, wast•ed, wast•ing**) to use up carelessly or foolishly. *He wasted his money on toys he didn't need.*

➤ **Waste** sounds like **waist**.

**waste•ful** /wāst′ fəl/ *adj.* tending to waste; using or spending too much. *Taking more food than you can eat is wasteful.*

**watch** /wŏch/ *n.* (**watch•es** *pl.*) a small clock worn on the wrist or carried in a pocket. *I checked my watch to be sure I had the correct time.*

**wa•ter**[1] /wô′ tər/ or /wŏt′ ər/ *n.* the clear liquid that falls as rain. *Water becomes ice when it freezes.*

**wa•ter**[2] /wô′ tər/ or /wŏt′ ər/ *v.* to put water on. *Did you water the flowers today?*

**weak•en** /wē′ kən/ *v.* to make weak; to become weak. *His legs weakened as he climbed up the mountain.*

**weak•ness** /wēk′ nĭs/ *n.* (**weak•ness•es** *pl.*) **a.** lack of strength or power. *An illness can cause weakness.* **b.** a weak point; a fault. *Poor fielding is the baseball team's only weakness.*

**wealth** /wĕlth/ *n.* an abundance of valuable material possessions or money. *I wish you much wealth and fortune.* (**wealth•y**, *adj.*, **wealth•i•er**, *comp.*, **wealth•i•est**, *sup.*)

**Wed.** Wednesday.

**Wednes•day** /wĕnz′ dē/ or /-dā′/ *n.* the fourth day of the week. *Wednesday is the day after Tuesday.* [Old English *Wodnesdæg*, Woden's day.]

**week** /wēk/ *n.* a period of seven days, especially from Sunday to Saturday. *This is the third week of the month.*

**week•end** /wēk′ ĕnd′/ *n.* Saturday and Sunday, as a time for rest, play, visiting, etc. *We are going bowling this weekend.*

**weight•less** /wāt′ lĭs/ *adj.* not experiencing the effects of gravity. *We are weightless in space.*

**west**[1] /wĕst/ *n.* the direction in which the sun sets. *East and west are opposite directions.*

**west**[2] /wĕst/ *adj.* **a.** in the west; of the west; toward the west. *Cindy lives in the west end.* **b.** from the west. *A west wind was blowing.*

**west**[3] /wĕst/ *adv.* toward the west. *We walked west.*

**when•ev•er** /hwĕn ĕv′ ər/ *conj.* at any time that. *I'm ready whenever you are.*

**weth•er** /hwĕ*th*′ ər/ *conj.* if. *He didn't know whether he should laugh or cry.*

**whis•tle**[1] /hwĭs′ əl/ or /wĭs′ əl/ *v.* (**whis•tles, whis•tled, whis•tling**) to utter a shrill sound by blowing or drawing air through the puckered lips. *Pa likes to whistle while he works.*

**whis•tle**[2] /hwĭs′ əl/ or /wĭs′ əl/ *n.* a small wind instrument in which sound is produced by the forcible passage of breath through a slit in a short tube. *The coach blew his whistle to end practice.*

**who** /hōō/ *pron.* what or which person or persons: *Who wants dinner?* **whom** *pron. objective case,* **whose** *pronoun adj. possessive form.*

**whose** /hōōz/ *pron.* of whom; of which. *Whose jacket did you borrow?*

**wide** /wīd′/ *adj.* (**wid•er, wid•est**) covering or having more space from side to side than something else. *Because I broke my foot, I need wide shoes.* (**wi•den** *v.*)

**wid•est** /wīd′ ĭst/ *adj.* (**wide, wid•er**) covering or having the most space from side to side than anything else. *They placed the large painting on the widest wall.*

**wife** /wīf/ *n.* (**wives** *pl.*) the woman a man is married to. *He brought flowers to his wife on her birthday.*

**wild** /wīld/ *adj.* not tamed; not cultivated; living or growing in a natural condition. *Wild plants grew along the side of the road.*

**win•ter**[1] /wĭn′ tər/ *n.* the coldest season of the year. *Winter comes between autumn and spring.*

**win•ter**[2] /wĭn′ tər/ *adj.* of or for the winter. *Ice skating is a winter sport.*

**wise** /wīz/ *adj.* (**wi•ser, wis•est**) **a.** having good sense; showing good judgment. *She made a wise decision.* **b.** having much knowledge or information. *Scientists and professors are wise.*

**Pronunciation Key**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ă | pat | ŏ | pot | th | thin |
| ā | pay | ō | toe | *th* | this |
| âr | care | ô | paw, for | hw | which |
| ä | father | oi | noise | zh | vision |
| ĕ | pet | ou | out | ə | about, |
| ē | be | o͝o | took | | item, |
| ĭ | pit | o͞o | boot | | pencil, |
| ī | pie | ŭ | cut | | gallop, |
| îr | pier | ûr | urge | | circus |

**wis•er** /wīz′ ər/ *adj.* more sensible than before. *He was wiser about the hiking trail because he had hiked it before.*

**wives** /wīvz/ *n.* plural of **wife**.

**wolf** /wo͝olf/ *n.* (**wolves** *pl.*) a wild animal of the dog family, slightly larger than a German shepherd. *Arctic wolves eat mice and travel in packs.*

**wolf**

**wom•an** /wo͝om′ ən/ *n.* (**wom•en** *pl.*) a grown female person. *Your mother is a woman.*

**wom•en** /wĭm′ ĭn/ *n.* (**wom•an** *sing.*) grown females. *These women are my aunts.*

**won•der** /wŭn′ dər/ *v.* to be curious to know. *I wonder how the story will end.* (**won•drous** *adj.*)

**won•der•ment** /wŭn′ dər mənt/ *n.* the condition of surprise or amazement. *The baby played with the new toy in wonderment.*

**wood•en** /wo͝od′ n/ *adj.* made or consisting of wood. *We need to repaint our wooden shed.*

**wool•en** /wo͝ol′ ən/ *adj.* made or consisting of wool. *This woolen sweater makes me itch.*

**work•er** /wûr′ kər/ *n.* one who works. *Our server in the restaurant was a good worker.*

**wrap** /răp/ *v.* (**wraps, wrapped, wrap•ping**) **a.** to enclose in something by winding or folding. *Wrap the baby in warm blankets.* **b.** to cover with paper. *Did you wrap the gift for your mother?*

**wrap**

**wreath** /rēth/ *n.* (**wreaths** *pl.*) a ring made of flowers, leaves, or small branches. *This wreath is made out of pine branches.*

**wretch•ed** /rĕch′ ĭd/ *adj.* in a terrible, miserable state. *The wretched conditions after the flood caused many to come help.*

**wrig•gle** /rĭg′ əl/ *v.* (**wrig•gles, wrig•gled, wrig•gling**) to move the body or a bodily part back and forth like a worm; to squirm. *Our hamster likes to wriggle when you hold him.*

**wring** /rĭng/ *v.* (**wrings, wrung, wring•ing**) to twist and squeeze. *Wring out that wet cloth before you wipe the table.*

**wrin•kle**[1] /rĭng′ kəl/ *n.* a small crease or fold. *Rosa ironed the wrinkles out of her skirt.*

**wrin•kle**[2] /rĭng′ kəl/ *v.* to crease or crumple. *Your forehead wrinkles when you frown.*

**write** /rīt/ *v.* (**writes, wrote, writ•ten, writ•ing**) **a.** to form letters or words with a pen, pencil, or other instrument. *Most people learn to write in school.* **b.** to be the author of. *He will write a story for the school newspaper.*

➤ **Write** sounds like **right**.

**writ•ten** /rĭt′ n/ *v.* a form of **write**.

**wrong** /rông/ or /rŏng/ *adj.* **a.** not right; bad; wicked. *Telling lies is wrong.* **b.** not correct; not true. *Your answer was wrong.* **c.** out of order. *Do you know what's wrong with the phone?*

**wrote** /rōt/ *v.* past tense of **write**.

# Y

**-y** a Greek adjective suffix that means "somewhat like": *juicy.*

**year** /yîr/ *n.* a period of 365 days or 12 months. *The calendar year begins on January 1.*

**year•book** /yîr′ bo͝ok′/ *n.* a school publication that is usually compiled by students in a graduating class and that serves as a record of the year's activities. *My picture is in the yearbook seven times.*

**yen** /yĕn/ *n.* the currency used in Japan. *My grandparents gave me twenty yen for my birthday.*

**young** /yŭng/ *adj.* not old or fully grown. *A fawn is a young deer.*

**youth** /yo͞oth/ *n.* **a.** a young person, especially a young man. *Who is the tall youth with the red hair?* **b.** the quality or the time period of being young. *Youth is followed by adulthood.*

# Z

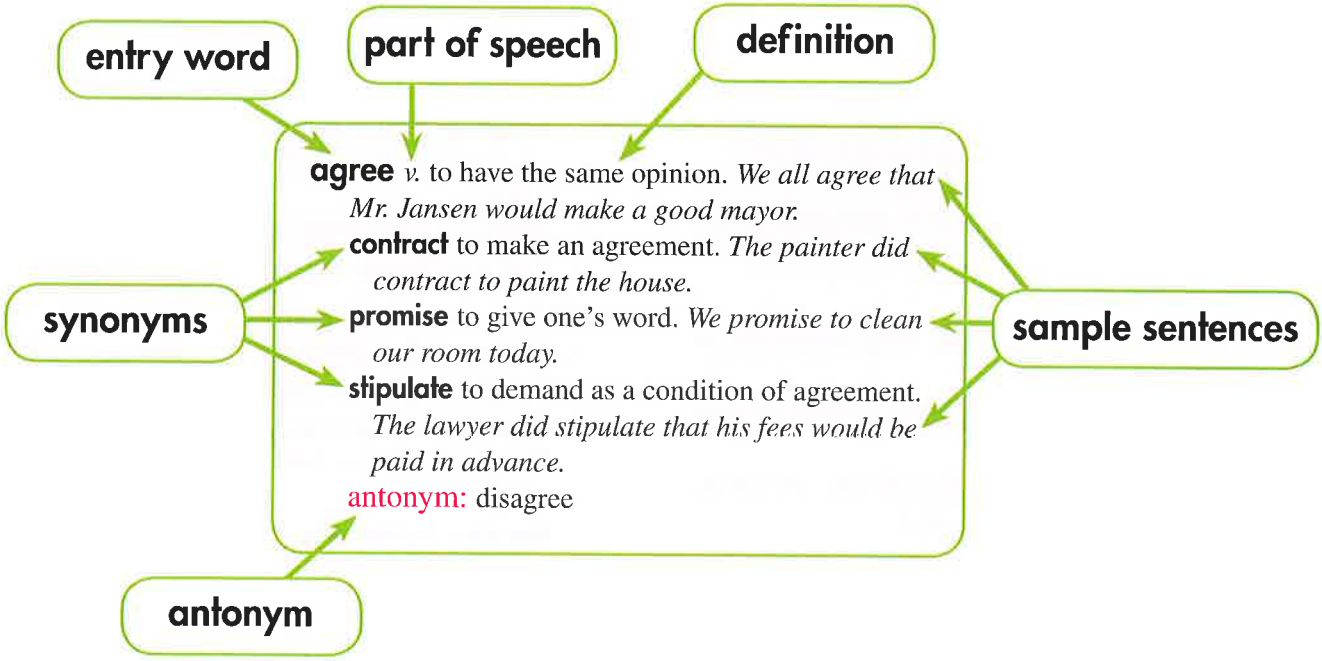
**zip code** /zĭp′ kōd/ *n.* a system that uses a set of numbers to identify each postal delivery area in the United States. *I live in Fort Worth, Texas, and my zip code is 76112.*

**zip•per** /zĭp′ ər/ *n.* a fastening device with two rows of tiny teeth that can be closed together by a sliding tab. *My boots close with a zipper.*

# Using the Thesaurus

The **Writing Thesaurus** provides synonyms—words that mean the same or nearly the same—and antonyms—words that mean the opposite—for your spelling words. Use this sample to identify the various parts of each thesaurus entry.

- **Entry words** are listed in alphabetical order and are printed in boldface type.
- The abbreviation for the **part of speech** of each entry word follows the boldface entry word.
- The **definition** of the entry word matches the definition of the word in your **Spelling Dictionary**. A **sample sentence** shows the correct use of the word in context.
- Each **synonym** for the entry word is listed under the entry word. Again, a sample sentence shows the correct use of the synonym in context.
- Where appropriate, **antonyms** for the entry word are listed at the end of the entry.


entry word
part of speech
definition
agree v. to have the same opinion. We all agree that Mr. Jansen would make a good mayor.
contract to make an agreement. The painter did contract to paint the house.
promise to give one's word. We promise to clean our room today.
stipulate to demand as a condition of agreement. The lawyer did stipulate that his fees would be paid in advance.
antonym: disagree
synonyms
sample sentences
antonym

**able** *adj.* having power, skill, or talent. *With practice you will be able to play the piano.*
- **competent** able; qualified. *The meal was prepared by a very competent chef.*
- **skillful** having skill. *The skillful player won the tennis game.*
- **talented** gifted; having natural ability. *The talented musician played the piano for us.*

antonym: unable

**agree** *v.* to have the same opinion. *We all agree that Mr. Jansen would make a good mayor.*
- **contract** to make an agreement. *The painter did contract to paint the house.*
- **promise** to give one's word. *We promise to clean our room today.*
- **stipulate** to demand as a condition of agreement. *The lawyer did stipulate that her fees would be paid in advance.*

antonym: disagree

**agreement** *n.* an arrangement or understanding between two persons or groups. *The students came to an agreement about the best day for the litter cleanup.*
- **arrangement** settlement; agreement. *The new arrangement satisfied everyone.*
- **contract** an agreement. *The contract had specific terms for the car loan.*
- **settlement** an arrangement; agreement. *The president worked for a quick settlement on wages for post office employees.*
- **understanding** an agreement or arrangement. *We have an understanding about the terms for buying the house.*

**ahead** *adv.* in advance; in front. *Dad walked ahead to look for a campsite.*
- **before** in front; ahead. *He walked before us to see that the path was clear.*
- **forward** in front; ahead. *Once the line started to move, we all stepped forward.*

antonym: behind

**aim** *v.* to point at; direct toward. *Aim the arrow at the center of the target.*
- **beam** to send out; direct. *The machine will beam the light at the sign.*
- **direct** to point or aim. *He will direct the traffic away from the parade route.*
- **level** to keep even. *The police officer will level his rifle at the target.*
- **point** to aim; direct. *Ask John to point at the deer standing behind the bush.*
- **train** to point; aim. *She will train the spotlight on the actor.*

**alarm** *n.* a signal warning that danger is near. *The alarm went off moments after the fire started.*
- **beacon** light or fire used to warn. *The beacon was placed on the shoreline.*
- **bell** anything that makes a ringing sound. *The bell rang to warn the ships in the fog.*
- **signal** a sign of warning or notice. *A red light was the signal to indicate danger.*
- **siren** a loud whistle. *The fire siren warned us that a fire truck was coming.*

**alive** *adj.* living; not dead. *People sometimes forget that trees are alive.*
- **existing** living; having life. *The existing animals were saved from starvation.*
- **living** being alive; having life. *The artificial plants looked like living ones.*

antonym: dead

**alone** *adv.* without anyone else. *The box was too heavy for one person to lift alone.*
- **singly** by itself; separately. *Let us review each person singly to see how well his or her job is done.*
- **solely** alone; the only one or ones. *I am solely responsible for the picnic plans.*

**also** *adv.* too; in addition; likewise. *Geraniums grow well not only in flowerpots but also in gardens.*
- **besides** in addition; also. *Many people besides the parents came to the play.*
- **likewise** also; too. *I will be there on time, and she will likewise.*
- **too** also; besides. *The cats and dogs are hungry, too.*

**amount** *n.* the total or sum. *We raised the amount of money needed for the books.*
- **figure** price; amount. *The figure for the car was less because of the rebates.*
- **number** amount; total. *A number of people were invited to the party.*
- **sum** amount; total. *We paid a large sum for the new house.*
- **total** amount; sum. *A total of 100 tickets were sold for the community play.*

**answer** *n.* a reply. *I must send my answer to her letter quickly.*
- **acknowledgment** something done to let one know that a service or gift was received. *An acknowledgment was sent to thank us for the gift.*
- **reply** response; answer. *Your reply was very easy to understand.*
- **response** an answer. *The response she gave was very prompt.*

**apart** *adv.* to pieces; in separate pieces. *The puzzle fell apart when it slipped off the table.*
- **independently** on one's own. *The class members selected projects independently.*
- **separately** individually; one at a time. *We worked separately on the project.*
- antonym: together

**apartment** *n.* a group of rooms to live in, generally in a building housing more than one family. *They live in an apartment on the second floor.*
- **flat** apartment or set of rooms. *We lived in a flat above the store.*
- **room** a part of a building with walls of its own. *The hotel rented us a room for the night.*
- **suite** set of rooms connected to each other. *The hotel suite had five rooms.*

**army** *n.* a large group of people who are organized and trained to serve as soldiers. *The United States Army fought in Europe during World War II.*
- **armed forces** the army, navy, and air force of a country. *The armed forces took part in the Fourth of July parade.*
- **soldiers** men or women in the army. *The soldiers were trained in Louisiana.*
- **troops** soldiers. *The troops helped to rescue people after the earthquake.*

**babysitter** *n.* one who takes care of young children. *Juan's mother called a babysitter to stay with him for the afternoon.*
- **nanny** a person who takes care of children. *The nanny took the children to the park.*
- **nursemaid** a girl or woman hired to care for children. *The nursemaid knew how to prepare the baby's food.*

**badge** *n.* something worn to show that a person is a member of a group or an organization. *Each firefighter wore a badge.*
- **emblem** a badge or sign. *The police officer had an emblem on her uniform.*
- **name tag** a badge worn that gives a name. *Everyone at the meeting wore a name tag to help people learn names.*

**baggage** *n.* suitcases; luggage. *Airline passengers may pick up their baggage inside the terminal.*
- **luggage** baggage. *The passengers checked their luggage at the ticket counter.*
- **suitcase** a flat, rectangular-shaped bag for traveling. *We packed our clothes in the suitcase.*

**battle** *n.* a fight between armies, navies, etc., during a war. *That battle was the turning point of the war.*
- **combat** a fight or struggle. *The argument was settled without any combat.*
- **conflict** a fight or struggle. *The conflict over employee wages lasted for years.*
- **encounter** a meeting of enemies; battle; fight. *The peaceful encounter between the two groups led to a settlement.*
- **war** a fight or conflict. *The war between the two groups lasted only a few days.*

**because** *conj.* for the reason that. *I study because I want to learn.*
- **as** because. *As she knew how to act better than anyone else, she became the star of the show.*
- **for** because. *We can't stay outside, for it is raining.*
- **since** because. *Since you want a new toy, you should save your money.*

**begin** *v.* to start. *We will begin our school day with an arithmetic lesson.*
- **commence** to begin; start. *The play will commence when the curtain opens.*
- **open** to start or set up. *They will open a new store in the shopping center.*
- **start** to begin. *We will start reading at the beginning of the chapter.*
- **undertake** to try; attempt. *We will undertake the new assignment as soon as we get to work this morning.*

antonyms: end, finish

**believe** *v.* to accept something as true or real. *Do you believe that cats have nine lives?*
- **assume** to suppose; to believe something to be true or real. *We could assume that the bus driver knew the correct route.*
- **suppose** to believe, think, or imagine. *I suppose we could try to fix the toy.*
- **think** to believe; to have an opinion. *I think it will rain today.*
- **trust** to have faith; believe. *I trust you know how to solve the math problem.*

**beside** *prep.* at the side of; near to. *The carton was left beside the trash cans.*
- **abreast** side by side. *In the parade the Boy Scouts marched four abreast.*
- **alongside** by the side of; side by side. *The trees were alongside the building.*

**between** *prep.* in the space that separates two things. *There were four people between me and the door.*
- **in the midst** in the middle of. *The toys were put in the midst of the children.*

**bitter** *adj.* tasting sharp and unpleasant. *Do you think black walnuts have a bitter taste?*
- **sharp** strongly affecting the senses. *The lemon drops had a very sharp taste.*
- **sour** having a sharp, bitter taste. *The sour lemon juice was used in the tea.*

**boast** *v.* to brag; to talk too much about oneself and about what one can do. *Judy likes to boast about how fast she can run.*
- **bluster** to talk in a noisy manner. *The man tried to complain and bluster at the clerk.*
- **brag** to boast; praise oneself. *Tom always seems to brag about his bicycle.*
- **crow** to show one's pride; boast. *We listened to the winners crow about how well they ran.*

**bold** *adj.* not afraid to face danger; brave and daring. *The bold gymnast attempted a difficult vault.*
- **brave** showing courage; without fear. *The brave firefighter saved the people in the burning house.*
- **courageous** brave; fearless. *The courageous child saved the animals from the cold winter storm.*
- **fearless** without fear. *The fearless woman raced to catch the falling child.*

antonyms: cowardly, afraid, weak

**break** *v.* to come apart; separate into pieces. *The dish will break if it falls on the floor.*
- **crack** to break without separating into parts. *The dish might crack when it lands on the floor.*
- **shatter** to break into pieces. *The glass will shatter when it hits the floor.*
- **snap** to break suddenly. *The rope did snap when we pulled on it.*
- **split** to separate into pieces. *The seam split as he pulled on his jacket.*

**brief** *adj.* short; quick; direct. *Our meeting was brief.*
- **concise** short; brief. *He gave a concise report to the group.*
- **little** not long in time; short. *Please wait a little while before you go.*
- **short** not long. *It took only a few minutes to read the short story.*
- **succinct** brief; short. *The succinct comments really told the whole story.*
- **terse** brief; to the point. *A one-word answer is a terse reply.*

**brighten** *v.* to lighten; make or become bright. *The lamp will brighten the living room.*
- **illuminate** to light up; make bright. *The lights will illuminate the sky.*
- **lighten** to make brighter; to add light to. *The new paint does lighten the room.*

antonym: darken

**bubble** *n.* a thin, round film of liquid that forms a ball around a pocket of gas or air. *The slightest touch can pop a bubble.*
- **bead** any small, round object like a bubble. *A bead of water formed on the newly waxed car.*
- **blob** a small drop. *A blob of jelly fell on the floor.*

**build** *v.* to make; put together. *Doug wants to build a model house out of toothpicks.*
- **construct** to build; fit together. *The builders will construct a new office tower.*
- **erect** to put up; build. *The landscaping crew can erect a new flag pole.*
- **make** to build; put together. *We will make a tree house in the backyard.*
- **put up** to build. *We followed the directions when we put up the tent.*

**burst** *v.* to break open suddenly. *The balloon will burst if it touches the light bulb.*
- **blow up** to explode. *The balloon will blow up when Horace jumps on it.*
- **explode** to burst with a loud noise. *The fireworks explode high in the sky.*
- **rupture** to break; burst. *Where did the water main rupture?*

**buy** *v.* to purchase. *Sally had to buy a new pair of shoes before winter.*
- **purchase** to buy. *He can purchase the jewelry at the shop by our house.*
- **shop** to go to stores to look at or buy things. *We plan to shop for a new coat.*

antonyms: sell, market

**calm** *adj.* quiet; peaceful; motionless. *There wasn't even a breeze on that calm evening.*
- **composed** quiet; calm. *The composed officer came forward to receive the award.*
- **cool** calm; not excited. *The people kept cool and walked to the nearest exit.*
- **serene** calm; peaceful. *A serene smile could be seen on her face.*
- **tranquil** peaceful; quiet; calm. *The tranquil night air was very relaxing.*

antonyms: nervous, anxious

**careful** *adj.* cautious; full of care. *Be careful when you cross the busy street.*
- **cautious** very careful. *The cautious player watched the ball at all times.*
- **considered** carefully thought out. *His considered opinion was respected by everyone.*
- **diligent** careful; steady. *He is a diligent worker.*

antonym: careless

**careless** *adj.* reckless; not cautious. *You can't afford to be careless with matches.*
- **negligent** careless. *No one liked the negligent way Pat drove.*
- **thoughtless** without thought. *Her thoughtless behavior made me angry.*

antonym: careful

**cart** *n.* a two-wheeled vehicle pulled by a horse or another animal. *The pony pulled a cart in the parade.*
- **buggy** a small carriage pulled by a horse. *We rode in a buggy around the park.*
- **wagon** a four-wheeled vehicle. *The wagon was pulled by a horse.*

**case** *n.* a large box; container. *Our music teacher carries her violin in a case.*
- **bin** a box or container. *The grain was stored in a large bin.*
- **box** container with four sides, a bottom, and a lid. *We packed the dishes in a box.*
- **carton** a box made of cardboard. *The books were packed in a carton.*
- **container** a box, can, etc. used to hold things. *She put the paper clips in a small container.*

**certain** *adj.* confident; sure; convinced. *She was certain you would win.*
- **decided** definite; clear. *There is a decided difference between the two books on hamsters.*
- **definite** clear; exact. *I want a definite answer to my question.*
- **sure** certain; positive. *I am sure that is the right way to go.*

antonym: uncertain

**charge** *n.* an amount asked or made as payment. *There is no charge for this service.*
- **amount** the total or sum. *We raised the amount of money needed to buy the books for our new library.*
- **cost** the price paid. *The cost of the shirt was more than I was willing to pay.*
- **price** the amount charged for something. *The price of cars goes up every year.*

**charm** *v.* to delight; please. *The child's smile did charm the audience.*
- **delight** to please greatly. *The pony rides will delight the children.*
- **enchant** to delight. *The magician can enchant the audience with his tricks.*
- **fascinate** to attract; enchant. *The music will fascinate all of us.*

**chart** *v.* to make a map or a diagram of. *My job is to chart our class's spelling progress.*
- **diagram** to put a sketch on paper. *The builder will diagram the house plan for us.*
- **map** to plan; arrange. *We will map out our work.*
- **outline** to sketch; make a plan. *She tried to outline the entire trip for us.*
- **plot** to plan secretly. *The pirate will plot a way to get the treasure.*

**cheer** *v.* to shout words of approval; to encourage by yelling. *We all cheer for our star player as he comes on the field.*
- **encourage** to give courage. *The coach tried to encourage the players to do their best.*
- **shout** to say loudly. *We shout encouragement to the runners.*
- **yell** to shout loudly. *The fans yell cheers to the home team.*

**cheerful** *adj.* happy; joyful. *Kari gave a cheerful smile.*
- **good-humored** cheerful; pleasant. *The good-humored clown entertained everyone.*
- **joyful** full of joy. *The first and last days of school are always joyful.*
- **rosy** bright; cheerful. *The good news meant there would be a rosy future.*
- **sunny** happy, cheerful; bright. *May had a sunny personality that cheered everyone around her.*

antonyms: cheerless, sad, gloomy

**chief** *n.* a leader; a head of a tribe or group. *The chief leads the tribal council.*
- **captain** head of a group; chief; leader. *John is the captain of the football team.*
- **head** leader; chief person. *The head of the school was Mr. Smith.*
- **leader** person who leads. *Jan was the leader of the debate team.*
- **officer** person who holds an office in a club or organization. *The president is the top officer of the business.*

**choice** *n.* a decision; selection. *For dinner we will go to the restaurant of your choice.*
- **decision** a choice. *I have made a decision about the theme for the food, costumes, and invitations for the big Fourth of July party.*
- **option** choice; a choosing. *We have the option of taking a car, a bus, or a train to get to work.*
- **selection** choice; act of selecting. *The store had a good selection of clothes for children.*

**clear** *adj.* having no clouds; bright. *The sun shone in the clear sky.*
- **bright** very light or clear. *The bright day convinced us it would be a good day for a picnic.*
- **light** clear; bright. *The lamp makes the room as light as day.*
- **sunny** having much sunlight. *We wanted a sunny day for the parade.*

**climb** *v.* to go up, often using both hands and feet; to move on a steep slope. *The club members climb mountains all over the state.*
- **mount** to go up. *We tried to mount the stairs as fast as we could.*
- **scale** to climb. *We used ropes and hooks to scale the mountainside.*

**clothes** *n.* garments; articles of dress; clothing. *Some people order all of their clothes through a catalog.*
- **apparel** clothing; dress. *This store sells very expensive women's apparel.*
- **dress** clothing. *We studied about the dress of people from years ago.*
- **garments** articles of clothing. *The queen's garments were made of velvet.*

**clue** *n.* a piece of information that helps solve a problem or mystery. *In this game we use a word clue to solve the puzzle.*
- **hint** a sign; a suggestion. *The hint he gave us did not help us find the treasure.*
- **suggestion** something suggested. *They gave us a suggestion to help us solve the problem.*

**coast** *n.* the seashore; land along the sea or ocean. *There are many beaches along the coast of the Pacific Ocean.*
- **seacoast** coast; land by the sea. *Maine has a beautiful seacoast.*
- **shore** land along the sea, ocean, lake, etc. *We walked along the shore until we reached the path.*
- **shoreline** place where water and shore meet. *The rising water changed the shoreline.*

**compare** *v.* to examine things for similarities or differences. *If you compare prices, you can save money when you shop.*
- **contrast** to compare to show differences. *A list was made to contrast city living with country living.*
- **liken** to compare. *The art collector did liken my painting to one hanging in the museum.*
- **match** to fit together; be alike. *The curtains almost match the colors in the couch.*

**cottage** *n.* a small house. *We spent our vacation in a cottage on the beach.*
- **bungalow** a small, one-floor house. *The family lived in a bungalow.*
- **cabin** a small house, roughly built. *The mountain cabin was made of logs.*

**crowd** *v.* to push or squeeze together in a small space. *Many people tried to crowd into the small room.*
- **cram** to put too many into a space. *Twenty people tried to cram into the small waiting room.*
- **jam** to squeeze things or people together. *The riders tried to jam onto the train.*
- **swarm** to crowd. *Hundreds of fans might swarm onto the field after the game.*

**cute** *adj.* delightfully attractive or appealing. *The child looked cute in her rabbit costume.*
- **attractive** pretty; pleasing. *The attractive lady wore a black suit.*
- **charming** attractive; very pleasing. *The children had charming roles in the play.*
- **pretty** pleasing; attractive. *The pretty pictures decorated the walls.*

antonym: ugly

**dampen** *v.* to make moist or wet. *Dampen the cloth before you begin cleaning.*
- **moisten** to make or become moist. *We will moisten the towel with water and clean up the mess.*
- **wet** to make or become moist. *He can wet the soap to get lather.*

**danger** *n.* peril; chance of injury or harm. *Learning safety rules can help you avoid danger.*
- **hazard** chance or harm. *The railroad crossing has been a serious safety hazard.*
- **peril** chance of danger or harm. *The storm put the city in peril.*

**darkness** *n.* the state or quality of being without light or brightness. *The darkness of the sky warned of a coming storm.*
- **blackout** a lack of light in a city or place due to loss of power. *The blackout lasted for two hours.*
- **dusk** the time just before dark. *We got home at dusk.*
- **gloom** darkness. *The gloom spread over the city as the sun set.*

**deal** *v.* to handle in a certain way; cope. *It is important to know how to deal with emergencies.*
- **cope** to handle. *We will cope with the problem when it arises.*
- **handle** to deal with. *The director will handle all of the problems.*

**dew** *n.* water droplets that form at night on cool surfaces. *In the morning you may see dew on the leaves.*
- **mist** fine drops of water in the air. *We can see the mist out in the yard.*
- **moisture** small drops of water in the air. *The moisture in the air made the car wet.*
- **vapor** moisture in the air. *The water vapor in the air made the windows steam up.*

**dodge** *v.* to try to avoid; stay away from. *The batter stepped back from the plate to dodge the wild pitch.*
- **duck** to move suddenly to keep from being hit. *She had to duck quickly to avoid the ball.*
- **lurch** to lean or stagger. *The man began to lurch forward when he lost his balance.*
- **sidestep** to step aside. *The pitcher had to sidestep to avoid being hit by the line drive.*

**drag** *v.* to pull slowly along the ground; haul. *They drag the sled to the top of the hill and then slide down.*
- **pull** to move; drag. *We can pull the wagon up the hill.*
- **tow** to pull. *The truck will tow the car to the garage.*
- **tug** to pull hard. *He must tug on the rope to lead the horse to the barn.*

**eager** *adj.* excitedly or impatiently wanting or expecting something. *We were eager for school to begin that day.*
- **avid** very eager. *The avid fans cheered their team to victory.*
- **enthusiastic** eager; interested. *The class was very enthusiastic about the field trip.*
- **zealous** enthusiastic; eager. *The zealous efforts of the players made us feel we could win.*

**easy** *adj.* not hard or difficult. *The quiz was easy for me.*
- **effortless** easy; using little effort. *Because the work was so easy, it was an effortless job.*
- **elementary** basic; simple. *The computer instructor showed us the elementary steps for using the computer.*
- **simple** not hard; easy. *The simple problems were the best part of the test we had today.*

antonyms: hard, difficult

**echo** *v.* to send back a sound. *Our shouts can echo throughout the canyon.*
- **reverberate** to echo back. *Our voices reverberate off the walls of the cave.*
- **vibrate** to resound; echo. *The clanging of the bells would vibrate in our ears.*

**edge** *n.* border; side. *The cup fell off the edge of the table.*
- **border** side or edge of something. *We crossed the state border at noon.*
- **boundary** a border or limit. *The river is the western boundary of our county.*
- **brim** edge or border. *The cup was filled to the brim.*

**enjoy** *v.* to get pleasure from. *Did you enjoy the movie last night?*
- **delight** to please greatly. *The clowns will delight the children.*
- **like** to wish for; enjoy. *The children like the new game a lot.*

**enough** *adj.* as much or as many as needed. *The backpackers had enough food and water for three days.*
- **adequate** enough; sufficient. *The food supply was adequate for a family of four.*
- **ample** as much as is needed; enough. *My ample allowance easily covers lunches and supplies.*
- **sufficient** as much as is needed. *We took sufficient food for the long trip.*

**everyday** *adj.* ordinary; all right for the usual day or event. *You should wear your everyday clothes to play outside.*
- **common** usual; ordinary. *Having a lot of rain is common in this area.*
- **familiar** common; well-known. *Coloring is a familiar activity for young children.*
- **ordinary** everyday; common. *Today is a very ordinary day.*

**example** *n.* a sample; model; something that may be imitated. *If you don't understand how to do the problems, look at the example.*
- **case** a special condition; example. *The doctor treated a bad case of measles.*
- **model** something to be copied or imitated. *Use the pattern as the model for your drawing.*
- **sample** something to show what the rest are like. *The sample gave us a taste of various French foods.*

**eye** *v.* to look at or watch. *We wanted to eye the visitors to see if we knew any of them.*
- **observe** to see; notice. *We tried to observe the workers to discover ways to improve production.*
- **peer at** to look closely. *She likes to peer at the people in the cars on the street below.*
- **view** to look at; see. *We can view the craters on the moon with our new telescope.*
- **watch** to look at; observe. *The class will watch the movie about space travel.*

**fame** *n.* the state of being well-known; respect; recognition. *George Washington was a man of great fame.*
- **dignity** position of honor; rank; title. *The dignity of the office of President is upheld through traditions.*
- **majesty** nobility. *The majesty of the queen impressed all the guests.*
- **nobility** people of noble title. *The nobility ruled the country until the revolution.*

**fasten** *v.* to join; attach. *We can fasten this lamp to the wall over my desk.*
- **attach** to fasten; fix in place. *Attach the rope to the front of the sled.*
- **bind** to hold together. *We can bind sticks together as a bundle.*
- **join** to put together. *Let's join hands and walk in a circle.*
- **tie** to fasten; bind. *I will tie the packages together with string.*

**fear** *n.* a feeling of fright or alarm. *A dog shows fear by putting its tail between its legs.*
- **fright** fear; alarm. *The screeching brakes gave us a fright.*
- **panic** fear in many people. *The earthquake caused a panic in our city.*
- **scare** fright. *The loud noises sent a scare through all of us.*
- **terror** great fear; fright. *The sound of thunder caused terror in the child.*

**few** *adj.* not many. *There are few copies of this rare book available.*
- **scant** not enough. *The scant supplies worried the captain of the ship.*
- **scarce** hard to get. *Some coins have become very scarce.*
- **sparse** meager; scant. *The lack of food put everyone on a very sparse diet.*

antonym: many

**firm** *adj.* hard; solid. *They left the muddy road and walked on firm ground.*
- **solid** hard; firm. *The solid ground turned to mud because of the rain.*
- **stable** firm; steady. *The steel construction made the building very stable.*
- **steady** firm; solid. *He used a steady hand to guide the animal to safety.*

antonym: soft

**flavor** *n.* a particular taste. *Lemonade can have a sweet or tart flavor.*
- **tang** a strong flavor. *The chili powder gave the stew a zesty tang.*
- **taste** the special flavor of food. *The meat left a strange taste in my mouth.*

**flood** *n.* water that flows over normally dry land. *The low bridge was underwater for an hour after the flash flood.*
- **deluge** a great flood. *The deluge washed the bridge away.*
- **downpour** a very heavy rain. *The downpour caused flooding in the streets.*

**flour** *n.* a fine powder of ground grain, usually wheat. *Flour is used in breads.*
- **bran** the covering of grains of wheat, rye, etc. *The cereal contained bran.*
- **meal** anything ground to a powder. *The corn meal was ground to a fine powder.*

**flower** *n.* the blossom of a plant. *Tulips are flowers that bloom in the spring.*
- **bloom** a blossom; flower. *There was one perfect rose bloom in the vase.*
- **blossom** the flower of a seed plant. *The peach blossom smells beautiful.*
- **bud** a partly opened flower. *The bud will soon open into a lovely flower.*
- **floret** a small flower. *The floret was purple and pink.*

**fold** *v.* to close or bend parts of something together in order to fit it into a smaller space. *When we take down the flag, we fold it into the shape of a triangle.*
- **bend** to curve; to be crooked. *Bend the paper around the edges of the box.*
- **crease** to make a fold. *She will crease the paper as she wraps the package.*
- **crinkle** to wrinkle. *The paper will crinkle when it is crushed.*

**forth** *adv.* forward; onward. *From that day forth they were good friends.*
- **ahead** in the front; forward. *We will go ahead with the project.*
- **forward** toward the front. *Come forward and get your prize.*
- **onward** toward the front. *We will move onward to see the monument.*

**friend** *n.* a person one knows and likes. *Erin is my good friend.*
- **acquaintance** a person one knows but not as a close friend. *Almost every day I made a new acquaintance.*
- **classmate** member of the same class. *Our new classmate studied with us for the test.*
- **companion** a comrade; friend. *Jane and her companion worked and played together.*
- **comrade** a close friend; companion. *The police officer and her comrade directed traffic.*
- **mate** companion; friend. *My mate and I will try to go to a movie.*

antonym: enemy

**funny** *adj.* causing laughter or amusement. *The joke was funny.*
- **amusing** entertaining; funny. *The author wrote many amusing stories.*
- **humorous** amusing; funny. *I like the humorous stories he tells.*
- **witty** showing wit; clever and amusing. *The witty speaker made the audience laugh.*

**gather** *v.* to bring or come together. *When clouds gather, it often means rain.*
- **accumulate** to gather little by little. *Dust can accumulate under the sofa.*
- **assemble** to gather or bring together. *The students will assemble outside the museum.*
- **collect** to gather together. *The students want to collect aluminum cans for recycling.*

**gentle** *adj.* light; soft. *The gentle breeze rustled the leaves.*
- **easy** smooth and pleasant. *His quiet, easy way made everyone around him feel relaxed.*
- **mild** not harsh; not severe. *She had a very mild manner.*
- **soft** quiet; gentle; mild. *She has a soft voice.*

antonym: harsh

**gigantic** *adj.* extremely large. *Elephants and whales are gigantic.*
- **huge** very big; extremely large. *The huge truck was loaded with steel rails.*
- **stupendous** immense; extremely large. *The stupendous mountains were a beautiful sight to see.*

**glow** *v.* to give off light; to shine. *Fireflies glow in the dark.*
- **gleam** to give off light. *The little lamp will gleam in the darkness.*
- **glitter** to shine with sparkling light. *The beads on the costumes seemed to glitter.*
- **shine** to send out light; glow. *Please shine your flashlight over here.*
- **twinkle** to shine and glitter. *Stars twinkle in the night sky.*

**glue** *n.* a sticky liquid that hardens to hold things together. *Broken toys can be mended with glue.*
- **cement** something that hardens to hold things together. *Rubber cement is used to hold the pictures in the album.*
- **paste** mixture used to hold things together. *We used white paste to make the paper chains.*

**goal** *n.* a purpose; aim. *Mark's goal is to play the double bass in a symphony orchestra.*
- **aim** a purpose; goal. *The aim of the exercise is to build up leg muscles.*
- **objective** a goal; aim. *We each wrote an objective for our science project.*
- **purpose** an aim; plan. *The purpose of the game is to find all the numbers.*
- **target** a goal; objective. *Our target was to walk a mile in eight minutes.*

**group** *n.* a gathering or arrangement of people or objects. *There is a large group of people in the hotel lobby.*
- **branch** a part; division; local office. *That branch of the company is located in Sweden.*
- **division** one part of a whole; group; section. *This division of the company handles the manufacturing of our product.*
- **section** part of a city, region, etc. *The city offices are in this section of town.*

**happy** *adj.* feeling or showing pleasure; joyful. *The happy man whistled as he worked.*
- **cheerful** happy; joyful. *Kari gave us a cheerful smile.*
- **contented** pleased; satisfied. *The contented cat lay by the fire and purred.*
- **delighted** very glad; very pleased. *I am delighted that you came to visit.*
- **ecstatic** very happy; joyful. *The winner had an ecstatic look on her face.*
- **glad** happy; pleased. *We are glad that you won the prize.*

antonym: sad

**harden** *v.* to make or become hard. *The ground does harden during the cold weather.*
- **temper** to bring to a proper condition of hardness. *A special process of heating and cooling will temper the steel.*
- **toughen** to make or become tough. *The hard work will toughen our hands and our bodies.*

**haul** *v.* to pull with force; drag. *We tried to haul the rowboat out of the water.*
- **lug** to drag or pull along. *We must lug the boxes down the stairs.*
- **pull** to move; drag. *We can pull the wagon up the hill.*
- **tug** to pull hard. *He must tug on the rope to lead the horse to the barn.*

**heavy** *adj.* hard to move because of its weight; not light. *We will need two people to lift this heavy trunk.*
- **hefty** weighty; heavy. *The hefty man easily picked up the big boxes.*
- **husky** big and strong. *The job required a husky person to lift the crates.*
- **ponderous** very heavy. *An elephant is a ponderous animal.*
- **weighty** heavy. *The hasty decisions caused weighty problems for the city.*

antonym: light

**hedge** *n.* a thick row of bushes planted as a fence or boundary. *A hedge should be trimmed evenly.*
- **fence** a wall put around a yard or field. *The bushes made a fence around the yard.*
- **wall** a structure built around an area. *The plants made a wall of flowers around the patio.*

**helpless** *adj.* not able to help oneself or others. *We felt helpless to stop the school's litter problem.*
- **incapable** lacking ability. *He is incapable of performing that complicated task.*
- **incompetent** lacking power or ability. *She is incompetent when it comes to flying a helicopter.*
- **powerless** without power; helpless. *The powerless leader was finally removed from office.*
- **useless** of no use. *The old motor is useless.*

antonym: capable

**hero** *n.* a person admired for bravery or fine qualities. *Abraham Lincoln is a national hero.*
- **adventurer** person who seeks adventure. *The adventurer set out to explore the jungle.*
- **star** a person with exceptional qualities. *The little child was the star of the show.*

**high** *adj.* tall; far above the ground. *Eagles build nests on high cliffs.*
- **alpine** like high mountains. *The alpine trees rise high into the sky.*
- **tall** having great height. *The tall building could be seen for miles.*
- **towering** very high. *They climbed up the towering mountain.*

antonym: low

**highway** *n.* a main road. *A highway is usually numbered to simplify maps and road signs.*
- **boulevard** a broad street. *The boulevard was named after a president.*
- **interstate** a highway that connects two or more states. *Hundreds of cars, trucks, and buses use the interstate.*
- **road** a way for cars, trucks, etc. to travel. *The road went from town to the farm in the country.*
- **thoroughfare** a main road; highway. *Route 66 was a main thoroughfare in years past.*

**hire** *v.* to employ; pay a person for working. *Because business is good, the store can hire three more clerks.*
- **employ** to hire or give work to. *The company does employ many people.*
- **engage** to hire. *We must engage a crew to rake the leaves and mow the lawn.*

antonym: fire

**holiday** *n.* a day on which a special event is celebrated. *The family went to Grandmother's house for the holiday.*
- **fiesta** a holiday or festival. *The community planned a summer fiesta.*
- **vacation** a time with no school, work, or other duties. *The summer vacation gave us time to swim and play.*

**honest** *adj.* tending not to lie, cheat, or steal; able to be trusted. *An honest person always tells the truth.*
- **conscientious** taking care to do what is right. *The children were conscientious workers in school.*
- **honorable** showing a sense of what is right. *The honorable man was elected to the city council.*
- **sincere** real; honest. *His sincere efforts showed how much he cared about his work.*
- **trustworthy** reliable; dependable. *The bank employees were trustworthy.*
- **truthful** telling the truth. *The witness gave a truthful account of the accident.*
- **upstanding** honorable. *The upstanding judge was respected by the townspeople.*

antonym: dishonest

**hopeless** *adj.* having very little chance of working out right. *After darkness fell, they decided the search for the ball was hopeless.*
- **desperate** not caring; without hope. *After the tornado, they made a desperate search for the mailbox.*
- **despondent** having lost hope; discouraged. *The helpers were despondent over the conditions left by the storm.*
- **discouraged** lacking in courage. *The discouraged partners tried to sell the business.*
- **dismayed** greatly troubled. *She was dismayed that she failed to get to school on time.*

antonym: hopeful

**hotel** *n.* a place that provides guests with lodging, meals, and other services. *Our grandparents stayed in a hotel near the beach.*
- **inn** a place where travelers can get food and rooms. *The inn was built near a major highway.*
- **lodge** a place to live in. *The ski lodge was located in Aspen, Colorado.*
- **resort** a place people go to vacation. *The resort by the ocean had water sports and many other things to do.*

**however** *conj.* nevertheless. *I've never tasted eggplant before; however, it looks delicious.*
- **nevertheless** however; nonetheless. *We knew what to do; nevertheless, we waited.*
- **yet** nevertheless; however. *The game was well played, yet it would have been better if we had won.*

**huge** *adj.* very large. *A skyscraper is a huge building.*
- **enormous** extremely large. *The enormous hippopotamus wandered down to the river.*
- **immense** very large; huge. *The immense shopping center was the largest in the United States.*
- **tremendous** very large; enormous. *The tremendous whale slowly swam in front of the ship.*

antonyms: tiny, little, small

**idea** *n.* a thought; a plan. *Bringing plants to decorate the room was Kristin's idea.*
- **impression** idea; notion. *My impression of him changed when I saw how hard he worked.*
- **inspiration** brilliant idea. *My inspiration for the design came from the patterns in the wallpaper.*
- **notion** idea or understanding. *I don't think he has any notion of what I said.*
- **thought** idea; what one thinks. *My thought on the topic was written in my report.*
- **view** an idea; picture. *The outline will give you a general view of the story.*

**illness** *n.* poor health; a disease. *Craig went home from school because of illness.*
- **ailment** sickness; illness. *The ailment caused her to be very tired.*
- **malady** a disease or deep-seated illness. *Cancer is a very serious malady.*
- **sickness** an illness. *The fever was caused by the sickness.*

**invite** *v.* to ask a person to go somewhere or do something. *My mother will invite my friend to lunch.*
- **ask** to invite. *We must ask everyone to come to the school party.*
- **request** to ask. *She did request that we go to hear the speech on safety.*



**island** *n.* a piece of land with water all around it. *People must take a boat or an airplane to get to an island.*
- **cay** a low island; reef. *The cay was to the north of our hotel.*
- **isle** a small island. *Only the lighthouse was left on the isle.*

**joyful** *adj.* full of joy. *The first and last days of school are always joyful.*
- **enjoyable** giving joy. *We had a very enjoyable day at the zoo.*
- **pleasurable** pleasant; enjoyable. *The trip was a pleasurable time for all of us.*

**judge** *n.* one who presides over a court of law by hearing cases and making decisions. *A judge must be completely fair.*
- **justice of the peace** a local official who handles small cases and other minor duties. *The justice of the peace performed the wedding ceremony.*
- **magistrate** a judge in a court. *The court magistrate asked the jury to give its verdict.*

**jumble** *v.* to mix up. *We had to jumble the letters of the word for the puzzle.*
- **muddle** to make a mess of. *He did muddle his speech because he lost his notes.*
- **snarl** to tangle. *As it ran around the room, the cat managed to snarl the yarn.*
- **tangle** to twist together. *The rope might tangle around the post.*

**jungle** *n.* wild land near the equator with thickly grown tropical plants. *Parrots and monkeys live in a jungle.*
- **bush** wild, unsettled land. *The explorers roamed the bush of Australia.*
- **chaparral** an area of thick shrubs and small trees. *Animals live in the chaparral of the southwestern United States.*

**kettle** *n.* a pot used for heating liquids. *Put the kettle on the stove.*
- **boiler** large container. *The water was heated in the boiler.*
- **caldron** a large kettle. *We made soup in the old, black caldron.*

**kind** *adj.* friendly; thoughtful of others. *Everyone likes kind people.*
- **friendly** like a friend. *The friendly salesperson helped us with our problem.*
- **goodhearted** caring; generous. *The goodhearted neighbor helped everyone.*
- **gracious** kindly; pleasant. *The gracious hostess tried to make sure that her guests had a good time.*
- **hospitable** kind and friendly. *The town was hospitable to newcomers.*
- **thoughtful** considerate; kind. *The mayor was always thoughtful of our wishes.*

antonyms: cruel, mean

**knock** *v.* to strike with the fist or with a hard object. *I did knock on the door but no one answered.*
- **hit** to strike; knock. *The stick hit the ground with great force.*
- **punch** to hit with the fist. *He continued to punch the bag until it ripped.*
- **slap** to strike with an open hand. *She thought she had to slap the horse to make it move.*

**lady** *n.* a polite term for a woman. *We knew by her manners that she was a real lady.*
- **female** woman; girl. *Is the new student a female or a male?*
- **woman** a grown female person. *Do you know the woman in the blue gown?*

**laugh** *v.* to make sounds with the voice that show amusement. *Everyone seemed to laugh at the funny movie.*
- **giggle** to give high-pitched laughs. *The little children tried not to giggle at the cartoons.*
- **snicker** to make a sly or silly laugh. *The teens liked to snicker at the old movie.*

**lead** *v.* to direct or show the way. *She will lead the hikers home.*
- **direct** to tell or show the way. *Please direct me to the registration desk.*
- **guide** to direct; lead. *The ranger did guide the tourists through the forest preserve.*
- **show** to guide; direct. *I will show you the way to the museum.*

**leader** *n.* one who leads. *The Scout troop needs a new leader.*
- **captain** head of a group; chief; leader. *John is the captain of the football team.*
- **chief** a leader; a head of a tribe or group. *The chief of the tribe wore a headdress of feathers and beads.*
- **director** person who manages or directs. *The director told the actors where to stand.*
- **guide** person who leads or directs. *The guide showed us the way to the campsite.*
- **manager** a person who manages. *Have you met the new store manager?*
- **master** one who has power over others. *The master of the house made the rules.*

**learner** *n.* one who learns; student. *A good learner listens carefully.*
- **pupil** a person who is learning. *He is the new pupil in the dance class.*
- **scholar** a person in school; a learner. *The scholar studies her lessons every day.*
- **student** a person who studies. *Which student is doing the spelling assignment?*
- **trainee** a person who is being trained. *She is a trainee at the hospital.*

**least** *adj.* smallest in size or amount. *Which game costs the least money?*
- **lowest** not tall; not high. *This is the lowest score on the test.*
- **slightest** smallest of its kind. *The slightest one is four feet tall.*
- **smallest** littler than others. *This is the smallest doll I have ever seen.*

antonym: most

**lighten** *v.* to make brighter; to add light to. *The new paint does lighten the room.*
**brighten** to lighten; make or become brighter. *The lamp will brighten the living room.*
**illuminate** to light up; make bright. *The lights seem to illuminate the sky.*
antonym: darken

**listen** *v.* to pay attention; try to hear. *The audience did listen closely to the speaker.*
**eavesdrop** to listen secretly. *You can eavesdrop by putting your ear against the wall.*
**hear** to listen; to take in sounds. *We could hear everything that she said.*
**heed** to give attention to. *We must heed the advice we were given.*

**lose** *v.* to be unable to find; misplace. *Put the key in your pocket so you won't lose it.*
**mislay** to put away and forget where. *Where did you mislay your science book?*
**misplace** to put in the wrong place. *I always seem to misplace my gloves.*
antonym: find

**major** *adj.* larger; greater; primary. *We spent the major part of the day at the beach.*
**greater** better; larger. *The greater part of the afternoon was devoted to studying.*
**larger** bigger; greater. *The larger section of the office was used for the accounting division.*
**superior** better; greater. *This clothing is of superior quality.*

**mark** *v.* to make a visible sign on or by. *Mark the wrong answers with an "X."*
**initial** to mark or sign with initials. *Each member of the family needed to initial the document.*
**inscribe** to mark with letters, words, etc. *The jeweler will inscribe her initials on the bracelet.*
**stamp** to mark with some tool. *She needed to stamp the date on each letter.*

**market** *n.* a place where things can be bought and sold. *A supermarket is a large, modern market.*
**emporium** a large store selling many kinds of things. *At the emporium you can buy clothes, shoes, and things for the home.*
**shop** a place where things are sold. *The dress shop had an assortment of clothes to sell.*
**store** a place where things are kept for sale. *The store was located near my house.*

**master** *v.* to become skilled in. *It takes time and practice to master a foreign language.*
**conquer** to overcome; to get the better of. *If we want to conquer a difficult task, first divide it into small parts.*
**learn** to gain skill or knowledge. *We will learn about Africa in Social Studies.*

**middle** *n.* the point or part located at the same distance from each side or end; center. *Your nose is in the middle of your face.*
**center** the middle point. *The table is in the center of the room.*
**midst** the center. *The child is in the midst of the group.*

**moment** *n.* an instant; a very brief period. *I saw him for a moment but lost sight of him in the crowd.*
**instant** a moment in time. *The horse stopped for an instant and then raced away.*
**second** instant; moment. *He paused for a second before turning the key.*

**mount** *v.* to climb onto; to get up on. *The rider wants to mount his horse and gallop away.*
**ascend** to go up. *The group can ascend the steps to the platform.*
**climb** to go up; ascend. *We tried to climb to the top of the tower.*
**vault** to leap or jump. *She could vault over the hedge.*

**movement** *n.* action; change in position or location. *The children watched the slow movement of the snail across the sidewalk.*
**action** movement; way of moving. *She enjoys the action of a hockey game.*
**gesture** movement of the body to give an idea. *Waving her hand was a gesture to say she did not want to be disturbed.*

**mumble** *v.* to speak unclearly so that you are hard to understand. *If you mumble, no one will understand you.*
**murmur** to say softly. *We told her not to murmur her thanks, so everyone can hear her.*
**mutter** to speak unclearly. *He always seems to mutter when he gets tired.*
**whisper** to speak softly. *I like to whisper secrets to my closest friend.*

**near** *adv.* not far away in time or distance. *The train drew near.*
**alongside** by the side of. *The big car pulled up and parked alongside our car.*
**closely** near; next to. *The books are stacked closely together.*
antonym: far

**nearby** *adj.* not far off. *They live in a nearby town.*
**adjacent** near or close. *The new store will be on the adjacent lot.*
**adjoining** next to; bordering. *The adjoining lakes were connected by a stream.*
**close** near; together. *The buildings are very close to each other.*

**newspaper** *n.* a printed paper that contains news, advertisements, cartoons, etc. *My grandfather likes to work the crossword puzzles in the newspaper.*
**daily** a newspaper printed every day. *The article appeared in the daily.*
**paper** a newspaper. *Have you seen the comics in today's paper?*

**obey** *v.* to follow the orders of. *Children are taught to obey their parents.*
**comply** to follow a request. *I will comply with the captain's orders.*



**conform** to follow a law or rule. *She didn't like to conform to the rules of the tennis club.*
**observe** to keep; follow. *We always try to observe the rules about being quiet in the library.*
antonym: disobey

**often** *adv.* many times; frequently. *We often see our relatives during the holidays.*
**frequently** often; repeatedly. *We frequently shop at the grocery store in our neighborhood.*
**recurrently** repeatedly. *He had to cough recurrently.*
**repeatedly** more than once. *She repeatedly asked for news of her lost puppy.*

**owner** *n.* one who owns or possesses something. *Who is the owner of this plaid jacket?*
**landlord** person who owns a building. *We paid the rent to the landlord.*
**partner** one of a group who owns a company. *Each partner invested a lot of money in the new business.*
**proprietor** owner. *The proprietor of the store was very helpful to every customer.*

**package** *n.* a wrapped box; parcel. *How much will it cost to mail this package?*
**bundle** things tied or wrapped together; package. *The bundle of gifts contained many games and toys.*
**parcel** a package. *The driver delivered the parcel this morning.*

**paper** *n.* a written article; a report. *The teacher asked us to write a paper about the moon.*
**article** a written report; composition. *The article contained factual information about air pollution.*
**document** written information; report. *The lawyer found the document she wanted to use in court.*
**report** a written account of something. *The report was prepared by a committee.*

**pass** *v.* to hand over; give; send. *Please pass the salad.*
- **deliver** to hand over; give out. *The postal carrier will deliver the mail in the morning.*
- **hand** to pass; give. *Please hand me the jar of jam.*
- **transfer** to move from one place to another; to hand over. *We had to transfer the order to the New York office.*

**past** *adj.* gone by; previous. *This past month we had three inches of rain.*
- **earlier** previous; coming before. *The earlier report said the president would arrive on Tuesday.*
- **previous** coming before; earlier. *The previous lesson showed us how to multiply.*
- **prior** earlier; coming before. *The job did not require prior experience.*

**payment** *n.* an amount of money paid. *Most people who rent a house or apartment make a monthly payment to the landlord.*
- **compensation** an amount paid. *We were given compensation for our work.*
- **installment** part of a payment. *The loan was to be paid back in twelve monthly installments.*
- **settlement** payment. *The court settlement helped her pay the legal fees.*

**perfect** *adj.* having no flaws or errors; exactly right. *Charlene turned in a perfect paper in science.*
- **flawless** perfect; without flaw. *The flawless diamond was very valuable.*
- **ideal** perfect; having no flaws. *This is an ideal day to go to the beach.*
- **impeccable** perfect; faultless. *The group had impeccable manners.*

**piece** *n.* a part; a segment. *Would you like a piece of my orange?*
- **fragment** a piece broken off. *We found a fragment of the broken dish near the sink.*
- **part** a piece; less than the whole. *The best part of the dinner was the dessert.*
- **portion** a part; share. *One portion of the work was already completed.*
- **segment** piece or part of a whole. *She picked the shortest segment of the straw.*



**placement** *n.* location; arrangement. *The placement of the flowers added the perfect touch to the dinner table.*
- **arrangement** items in proper order. *The arrangement of pictures told the story of the Little Red Hen.*
- **location** place; position. *The store's location was ideal because it was on a corner of a busy street.*

**playful** *adj.* full of fun and enjoyment. *The baby was playful in his bath.*
- **frisky** lively; playful. *The frisky puppy ran all around the yard.*
- **frivolous** silly; full of fun. *Her frivolous behavior made us laugh.*
- **mischievous** teasing; full of fun. *The mischievous kitten unraveled the yarn.*

**port** *n.* a town with a harbor where ships may dock. *Boston is an Atlantic port.*
- **dock** platform built over water. *The ship unloaded at the dock.*
- **harbor** a place to dock ships and boats. *The steamship docked at the harbor.*
- **wharf** a dock; platform built out from shore. *The huge ship was tied at the wharf.*

**powder** *n.* a substance made of fine grains. *It's easy to grind chalk into a powder.*
- **dust** fine, dry earth. *The dust settled all over the road.*
- **grit** fine bits of sand or gravel. *The boat was covered with grit.*
- **sand** tiny bits of stone in large amounts, found in the deserts and on shores along oceans, lakes, and rivers. *This beach has smooth sand.*

**power** *n.* great strength, force, or control. *The police have power to enforce the law.*
- **control** power to direct. *The police have control over the traffic.*
- **force** power; strength. *The force of the wind blew the door open.*
- **strength** power; force. *He had the strength of a giant.*

**powerful** *adj.* having great power; strong. *The king was a powerful leader.*
- **able** having power, skill, or talent. *He is an able warrior.*
- **forceful** having much force or strength. *The forceful leader told everyone what to do.*
- **mighty** showing strength. *The mighty ruler rode off to battle.*
- **strong** having much force or power. *The strong woman lifted weights every day.*

antonym: powerless

**powerless** *adj.* having no strength or power; helpless. *The farmers were powerless against the drought.*
- **helpless** not able to help oneself. *The helpless child needed his parents.*
- **sickly** not strong. *A sickly person should not go hiking in the mountains.*
- **unable** not able. *I would like to help you, but I am unable.*

antonym: powerful

**preschool** *n.* a place of learning before elementary school. *Children aged three to five may attend preschool.*
- **daycare center** a place where young children are cared for while parents work. *Our community has a new daycare center.*
- **nursery school** a place for children under the age of five. *The nursery school helps the young children learn about numbers and letters.*

**quake** *v.* to vibrate or shake. *The ground did quake beneath us during the mild earthquake.*
- **quaver** tremble; shake. *The old house seemed to quaver as the strong winds blew.*
- **shake** to move quickly. *Please shake the dirt off your boots.*
- **tremble** to shake from fear, cold, etc. *We started to tremble when we heard the storm was near.*
- **vibrate** to move rapidly. *The strings of the violin vibrate as he plays.*

**quarrel** *v.* to fight; to disagree, using angry words. *They always quarrel about whose turn it is to bat.*
- **argue** to give reasons for and against an issue. *The students argued about the playground rules.*
- **bicker** to quarrel. *The children started to bicker over whose turn was next.*
- **brawl** to quarrel in a loud manner. *Two players started to brawl during the hockey game.*
- **wrangle** to argue or quarrel. *The group seemed to wrangle over every topic that was brought up at the meeting.*

**queen** *n.* a female ruler. *The queen issued a proclamation.*
- **czarina** a Russian empress. *The czarina wore beautiful clothes.*
- **empress** a woman who rules an empire. *The empress was admired by everyone.*

**question** *n.* a problem. *The litter question will be discussed tonight.*
- **issue** a problem; a point or topic. *The tax issue was always hotly debated.*
- **problem** a difficult question. *The new economic problem troubled the country.*
- **topic** subject that people write or talk about. *The topic of my report is health.*

antonym: answer

**quick** *adj.* fast; swift. *The rabbit made a quick leap into the bushes.*
- **fast** moving with speed; quick. *The fast runner took the lead and won the race.*
- **rapid** fast; quick. *They keep up a rapid pace on the assembly line.*
- **speedy** fast; rapid; quick. *The speedy messenger delivered the package on time.*
- **swift** very fast; rapid. *He gave a swift response to every test question.*

antonym: slow

**quit** *v.* to stop. *We'll quit raking leaves when it gets dark.*
- **cease** to stop; put to an end. *The noise will cease when the speaker begins.*
- **stop** to halt; to keep from doing something. *We couldn't stop them from winning.*

**quiz** *n.* a brief test. *I missed only two questions on the science quiz.*
- **checkup** an examination; inspection. *I saw my doctor for a checkup yesterday.*
- **examination** a test; set of questions. *We were given an examination by our teacher.*
- **test** an examination, often consisting of a series of questions or problems. *There were twenty items on the test.*

**quote** *v.* to repeat or refer to a passage from a story or poem. *Justin wanted to quote a line from the poem in his essay.*
- **recite** to say from memory. *We had to choose a poem to recite in class.*
- **repeat** to say again. *Please repeat what you said about using the dictionary.*

**range** *v.* to extend or vary within certain limits. *The stories in this book range from sad to funny.*
- **encompass** to include; contain. *The article will encompass a lot of information.*
- **span** to extend. *The new bridge will span the rocky canyon.*
- **vary** to change; be different. *The colors may vary in shades from light to dark.*

**rare** *adj.* not often found or seen. *My uncle saves rare postage stamps.*
- **scarce** rare; hard to get. *Some jungle animals have become very scarce.*
- **uncommon** rare; unusual. *Hummingbirds are uncommon in this state.*
- **unusual** not common; rare. *This unusual flower grows only in the desert.*

**rattle** *v.* to make a number of short, sharp sounds. *The windows rattle when the wind blows.*
- **bang** to make a loud noise. *The wind caused the shutters to bang against the house.*
- **clang** to make a loud, harsh sound. *The bells began to clang as the wind blew.*
- **clatter** to make a loud noise. *The dishes clatter as we stack them in the kitchen sink.*

**reader** *n.* a person who reads. *The teacher chose Kathy to be the reader of our lunchtime story this week.*
- **bookworm** a person who loves to read. *Karl is a bookworm; he reads all the time.*
- **browser** a person who looks through materials. *Robert is only a browser; he seldom reads a whole book.*

**ready** *adj.* prepared. *We are ready for school.*
- **available** able to be used. *She is available to start work tomorrow.*
- **prepared** ready. *The prepared lessons were put on tape.*

**reason** *n.* a cause or explanation. *Your parents will write the reason for your absence.*
- **cause** reason for action. *What was the cause of the accident?*
- **explanation** something that explains. *He didn't give an explanation for his absence.*
- **motive** reason; thought or feeling. *My motive for the trip was to hike farther than any of my friends had.*
- **purpose** reason for which something is done. *The major purpose of the lesson was to learn how to divide.*

**rebuild** *v.* to build again. *They are planning to rebuild the old school.*
- **reconstruct** to construct again. *The townspeople wanted to reconstruct the library after the fire.*
- **restore** to put back; establish again. *My uncle likes to restore old furniture.*

**record** *n.* an account of facts or events. *The secretary keeps the record of the club's activities.*
- **diary** a personal record of daily events. *Her diary told about the events of her life.*
- **memo** a short written statement. *The memo announced a special company picnic.*

**remain** *v.* to continue without change; stay. *The nurse reported that the patient's condition did remain good.*
- **continued** to stay; remain. *The weather will continue to be sunny and nice.*
- **linger** to stay on. *He could linger for hours in the library.*
- **loiter** to linger. *We liked to loiter along the way and to look in the store windows.*
- **stay** to continue; remain. *She decided to stay near the child until he fell asleep.*

**report** *v.* to give an account or statement. *The president of the company did report that sales had increased.*
- **disclose** to tell; to make known. *I will never disclose my friend's secret.*
- **reveal** to make known. *I will reveal my findings to the press next week.*
- **tell** to say; put in words. *The travel agent will tell us about France and Italy.*

**restful** *adj.* offering rest, peace, or quiet. *My aunt finds sewing restful after a busy day.*
- **calm** quiet; peaceful; motionless. *There wasn't even a breeze on that calm evening.*
- **cozy** warm; comfortable. *The cozy cottage was difficult to leave.*
- **peaceful** calm; quiet. *Early morning hours are peaceful.*
- **quiet** stillness; peace. *The quiet library was a good place to study.*
- **snug** warm; comfortable. *I felt snug in a warm coat.*
- **tranquil** peaceful; quiet; calm. *The tranquil night air was very relaxing.*

antonym: restless

**restless** *adj.* impatient; unable to be still. *The small children grew restless after the long delay.*
- **agitated** restless; impatient. *The agitated crowd began to yell at the speaker.*
- **impatient** not patient; restless. *We became impatient while waiting in line.*
- **nervous** upset; excited. *A nervous person tends to fidget a lot.*
- **uneasy** restless; disturbed. *The tornado warnings gave us an uneasy feeling.*

antonym: restful

**return** *v.* to come or go back. *We will return after the game is over.*
- **reappear** to appear again. *After the clouds pass, the stars will reappear in the night sky.*
- **recur** to occur again. *The problem will recur if we don't make any changes.*

**review** *v.* to study again; go over. *She did review the chapter before she took the test.*
- **critique** to review critically. *He had to critique the play and analyze the plot.*
- **examine** to look closely at. *I will examine all of the information before I decide what to do.*
- **study** to try to learn. *I will study my spelling words tonight.*
- **survey** to examine; look over. *She will survey the situation before she decides what to do.*

**rigid** *adj.* very stiff; unbending. *A cast holds a broken arm in a rigid position so it can heal.*
- **firm** solid; hard. *The sailors were glad to set foot on firm ground.*
- **hard** not soft; firm. *We couldn't pound the stakes into the hard ground.*
- **stiff** rigid; not able to bend. *The stiff paper could not be bent around the package.*
- **tense** stiff; stretched tight. *The tent was held up by the tense ropes.*

**rise** *n.* an increase in height or amount. *The store announced a rise in prices.*
- **boost** an increase in price, amount, etc. *The boost in prices made food cost more this year.*
- **growth** an increase; amount grown. *This year's growth has made the company very successful.*
- **raise** an increase in amount. *The workers were given a yearly raise in pay.*
- **swell** an increase in amount. *The swell of shoppers made the store owners happy.*

**role** *n.* a part or character in a play. *Who will play the role of Peter Pan?*
- **character** a person or animal in a book, play, etc. *The main character was a big monster from outer space.*
- **impersonation** a representation. *The woman gave an impersonation of a movie star.*
- **part** a role; character in a play. *The students will try out for each part in the school play.*

**roll** *v.* to move by turning over and over. *The ball started to roll down the hill.*
- **revolve** to move in a circle. *The planets revolve around the sun.*
- **rotate** to turn about a center. *Earth does rotate on its axis.*
- **turn** to rotate; move around. *The wheels will turn as the horse pulls the wagon.*
- **whirl** to spin; turn round and round. *The dancers whirl around the stage.*

**rough** *adj.* not smooth or even. *The car bounced and rattled over the rough road.*
- **bumpy** full of bumps. *We took a bumpy ride in an old wagon.*
- **rocky** bumpy; full of rocks. *The car made lots of noise as it bounced over the rocky mountain road.*
- **uneven** not level or flat. *The uneven ground made it hard to walk.*

**royal** *adj.* having to do with kings and queens. *The king and queen live in a royal palace.*
- **regal** belonging to royalty. *The regal party was held in the palace of the king.*
- **sovereign** having the power of a ruler. *The queen was the sovereign leader of the British Commonwealth.*

**rule** *n.* a law; regulation. *Always obey each and every school safety rule.*
- **fundamental** a basic principle. *You can't learn a sport one fundamental at a time.*
- **law** a rule or regulation made by a state, country, etc. *Each law was made by the state government.*
- **principle** a basic law or assumption. *It is a scientific principle that what goes up must come down.*
- **regulation** rule; law. *This regulation controls flights to all airports.*

**sadness** *n.* sorrow; grief. *Tears can be an expression of sadness.*
- **grief** sadness; sorrow. *His grief made him a very quiet person.*
- **melancholy** sadness; low spirits. *Her melancholy was caused by several painful events.*
- **sorrow** grief; sadness. *Her sorrow was caused by the loss of her pet.*
- **unhappiness** sorrow; sadness. *His illness caused his family much unhappiness.*

antonym: happiness

**safe** *adj.* free from risk or harm. *This sidewalk is a safe place to walk.*
- **armored** protected with armor. *An armored car is a safe way to transport money.*
- **protected** guarded; safe. *He led a very protected life.*
- **secure** safe. *They built a secure fence all around the farm.*

**sample** *n.* a part that shows what the rest are like. *The store gave away a free sample of the new soap.*
- **example** one thing that shows what others are like. *He used Dallas as an example of a Texas city.*
- **specimen** one of a group used to show what others are like. *Janet collected a new rock specimen from her world travels.*

**scale** *v.* to climb up or over. *The climbers used ropes to scale the cliff.*
- **climb** to go up; ascend. *We tried to climb to the top of the tower.*
- **mount** to climb onto; to get up on. *The rider wanted to mount his horse and gallop away.*
- **vault** to leap or jump. *She could vault over the hedge.*

**scare** *v.* to frighten. *The sudden loud noise did scare me.*
- **alarm** to frighten; fill with fear. *The loud whistle and siren seemed to alarm everyone.*
- **frighten** to scare; fill with fright. *The thunder did frighten us.*
- **startle** to frighten suddenly. *He made a loud noise to startle the birds out of the tree.*

**season** *v.* to improve the taste. *The chef will season the soup with herbs.*
- **flavor** to season. *The spices flavor the pot of stew.*
- **salt** to sprinkle with salt. *He always seems to salt his food more than anyone else does.*
- **spice** to season; add spice. *She decided to spice the pie with nutmeg and cloves.*

**seller** *n.* a person who sells; a vendor. *The flower seller had a stand on the street corner.*
- **merchant** a person who buys and sells. *The merchant in the shopping center is having a special sale.*
- **vendor** a seller; peddler. *The vendor services the candy machines once a week.*

**serve** *v.* to help others by performing a task. *Sarah will serve as club treasurer.*
- **administer** to be helpful; contribute. *Their job is to administer to the elderly.*
- **help** to do what is needed. *I can help you fix up the old house.*
- **perform** to do. *She did perform many duties as an officer of the company.*

**settle** *v.* to establish residence. *Their family did settle in California years ago.*
- **locate** to establish in a place. *She will locate her business near San Francisco.*
- **place** to put. *We will place the sign near the busy intersection.*
- **reside** to occupy a home or place. *The decision to reside at this address was made years ago.*

**share** *n.* a part; a portion. *Todd always does his share of work.*
- **allotment** a part; share. *The largest allotment was for food and housing.*
- **part** a share. *We wanted only the part of the reward that belonged to us.*
- **portion** a share; part. *A portion of time at the end of the day is set aside for storytime and cleanup.*

**shipment** *n.* the goods sent or delivered to a certain place. *The store received a clothing shipment from the manufacturer.*
- **cargo** the freight carried on a ship or another vehicle. *The barge carried a cargo of lumber to the mill.*
- **freight** goods carried by plane, truck, ship, or train. *The dockworker sent the freight by truck.*
- **load** something that is carried. *The load was too heavy for the small car.*

**shower** *n.* a short fall of rain. *During the afternoon there was a thunder shower.*
- **cloudburst** a sudden rain; violent rainstorm. *We were caught in the cloudburst and got very wet.*
- **downpour** a very heavy rain. *The downpour started while we were at a picnic.*
- **rain** water falling from the clouds in drops. *The rain came down all morning.*
- **torrent** an outpouring. *A torrent of rain caused the river to flood the whole valley.*

**shy** *adj.* reserved; quiet. *After Josh made friends at his new school, he was no longer shy.*
- **bashful** reserved; shy; easily embarrassed. *As a bashful child, she did not like to be with groups of people.*
- **quiet** peaceful; calm. *Alice spent a quiet afternoon reading.*
- **reserved** quiet; keeping to oneself. *The reserved child seldom spoke to anyone in his class at school.*
- **unsociable** reserved; bashful. *Ann was an unsociable child and often kept away from other people.*

**simple** *adj.* easy to understand. *The simple questions did not take long to answer.*
- **easy** not hard to do. *The science experiment was easy.*
- **effortless** requiring little effort. *Typing is an effortless task for him.*
- **elementary** simple; easy to learn first. *When learning a new sport, begin with the elementary principles.*

**singer** *n.* one who sings. *The singer joined a choir.*
- **artist** one skilled in the performance of an art. *The opera singer was a talented artist.*
- **crooner** a person who sings in a soft, sentimental style. *Crooners were popular in the forties.*
- **songster** a singer. *The songster sang everyone's favorite songs.*
- **vocalist** a singer. *The vocalist had an excellent soprano voice.*

**single** *adj.* one alone; only one. *A single orange was left in the box.*
- **lone** alone; single. *A lone cloud floated in the blue sky.*
- **one** a single unit. *One apple fell from the tree.*
- **only** single; sole. *Rose was the only child to win two races.*
- **sole** single; only one. *The pilot was the sole survivor of the plane crash.*

**skill** *n.* the ability to do something well as a result of practice. *His skill in playing the violin may someday make him famous.*
- **ability** skill; power to do something. *She has unusual ability in mathematics.*
- **knowledge** ability; what one knows. *His knowledge of World War II was outstanding.*
- **talent** a natural ability. *John had a special talent for building birdhouses.*

**slight** *adj.* not big; small; slender. *Although it looks sunny, there is a slight chance of rain later today.*
- **delicate** thin; of fine quality. *The blouse was trimmed with a delicate lace collar.*
- **faint** weak. *The faint colors hardly showed on the dark paper.*
- **little** not big; small. *The little problems could easily be solved.*
- **slim** slender; small. *We had a slim chance of winning the game.*
- **small** not large; little. *The picture had a small, decorated frame.*
- **tender** not strong; delicate. *The tender flowers were hurt by the heavy rain.*

**smart** *adj.* intelligent; clever; quick in mind. *A smart dog can learn many tricks.*
- **bright** clever; quick-witted. *The bright girl was the leader of the debate team.*
- **brilliant** having great ability or skill. *The brilliant boy won a scholarship to an engineering school.*
- **clever** bright; brilliant; quick-witted. *The clever student solved the math problem.*
- **intelligent** having intelligence. *The intelligent animals knew when it was feeding time.*
- **resourceful** quick-witted; able to think of ways to do things. *The resourceful team quickly scored the points they needed to win the football game.*

**smell** *n.* an odor; a scent. *The smell of orange blossoms filled the air.*
- **fragrance** pleasant odor or smell. *The new fragrance smelled like fresh flowers.*
- **odor** a smell; scent. *The odor from the bouquet of flowers made the whole room smell good.*
- **perfume** a sweet smell. *The perfume of the roses filled the air.*
- **scent** an odor; a smell. *The dogs followed the scent of the wolf.*

**snuggle** *v.* to lie or press together; cuddle. *The puppies need to snuggle close to their mother to keep warm.*
- **cuddle** to lie closely. *The kittens like to cuddle next to each other in the blanket.*
- **curl up** to roll up; draw up. *He wanted to curl up in his favorite chair with a blanket and a good book.*
- **nestle** to snuggle cozily or comfortably. *She will nestle her head in the pillow.*

**soar** *v.* to rise or fly high; glide. *Eagles soar gracefully in the sky.*
- **fly** to move through the air. *The planes fly high in the sky above the clouds.*
- **glide** to move along smoothly. *The birds glide across the sky.*
- **sail** to move smoothly. *The kite did sail high above the trees.*

**soften** *v.* to make or become soft. *Ice cream will soften in the heat.*
- **dissolve** to change to a liquid. *Sugar will dissolve when mixed with water.*
- **melt** to warm to turn into liquid. *We will melt the butter to use in the recipe.*

**son** *n.* a male child. *The mother took her son to a baseball game.*
- **boy** a male child. *The boy was ten years old today.*
- **child** a young boy or girl. *The child is the son of Mrs. James.*
- **descendant** offspring; person born of a certain group. *He thought he was a descendant of King Henry VIII.*
- **offspring** the young of a person or animal. *John is the only offspring of Mr. and Mrs. Smith.*

antonym: daughter

**sore** *adj.* painful; tender when touched. *His foot was sore after he stubbed his toe.*
- **aching** continuously painful. *The aching arm was put in a sling.*
- **painful** full of pain; hurting. *The painful cut was bandaged by the nurse.*
- **tender** painful; sensitive. *The bump on my arm was tender to the touch.*

**sort** *v.* to separate things into groups. *The child can sort the blocks into two piles by color.*
- **arrange** to put in order. *We can arrange the books by content.*
- **assort** to arrange by kinds. *We tried to assort the magazines in alphabetical order.*
- **classify** to arrange in groups or classes. *The team decided to classify the papers according to the students' last names.*

**spare** *adj.* extra. *Every automobile should have a spare tire.*
- **additional** extra; more. *We can get additional tickets if we need them.*
- **extra** additional; beyond what is needed. *The extra food makes another meal.*
- **reserve** extra; kept back. *The reserve stock will be sold at the annual meeting.*
- **supplementary** additional. *The supplementary books had more sports stories.*

**spark** *n.* a brief, bright flash of light. *We saw the spark of a firefly in the night.*
- **beam** a ray of light. *The beam from the flashlight was seen across the road.*
- **flicker** an unsteady light. *The flicker of the lamp was not enough light to cook by.*
- **gleam** a beam of light. *The gleam of the spotlight was seen for miles.*
- **ray** a beam of light. *The ray of light shone through the trees.*

**speak** *v.* to talk; to say words. *Speak clearly so that we can understand you.*
- **pronounce** to speak; to make sounds. *I will pronounce each spelling word for you.*
- **state** to express; to tell. *He will state the conditions of the agreement.*
- **talk** to speak; use words to give ideas or feelings. *I often talk about safety.*
- **utter** to speak; make known. *She meant to utter her opinion loudly so that everyone could hear.*

**speaker** *n.* a person who speaks or delivers public speeches. *The speaker at tonight's meeting will discuss the election.*
- **lecturer** person who lectures. *The lecturer spoke to the group on the subjects of health and fitness.*
- **spokesperson** person who speaks for others. *The group elected her as the spokesperson.*

**speed** *n.* swiftness; quickness. *An antelope has great speed.*
- **haste** a hurry; trying to be fast. *He did everything in haste.*
- **hurry** rushed movement or action. *She was in a hurry to get to the airport.*
- **rush** a hurry. *The rush of the work schedule made everyone tired.*

**spill** *v.* to run out; to flow over. *He tried not to spill juice on the tablecloth.*
- **flow** to pour out. *The water started to flow over the riverbanks.*
- **pour** to flow steadily. *The water will pour out of the broken pipe.*
- **run** to flow. *Water will run through the streets when it rains hard.*
- **stream** to flow; pour out. *The light seemed to stream down from the sky.*

**spoil** *v.* to ruin; damage; destroy. *The stain will spoil your shirt if you don't wash it out quickly.*
- **damage** to ruin; spoil. *The cold weather can damage the fruit.*
- **destroy** to break into pieces. *The wind might destroy the old, wooden fence.*
- **ruin** to spoil; destroy. *The spilled paint will ruin the carpet.*
- **smash** to destroy; ruin. *The car did smash the bicycle that was left in the driveway.*

**squeal** *v.* to make a sharp, high-pitched cry. *The baby did squeal with delight.*
- **cheep** to make a little, sharp sound. *We heard the baby birds cheep in the nest.*
- **cry** to make an animal noise. *The wolf seemed to cry at the moon in the night sky.*
- **peep** to make a sound like a chirp. *We heard the little chick peep for its mother.*

**stillness** *n.* quiet; silence. *After the city noise, the stillness of the country was a relief.*
- **hush** silence; quiet. *A hush in the room made us wonder what was wrong.*
- **quiet** state of rest. *The quiet of the night was perfect for sleeping.*
- **silence** an absence of noise. *The teacher asked for silence while we read the directions for the activity.*

**strange** *adj.* unusual; odd. *We were startled by the strange noise.*
- **bizarre** odd or queer in appearance. *The bizarre picture had very unusual colors.*
- **extraordinary** very unusual; strange. *The extraordinary size of the elephants made us stop and stare.*
- **fantastic** unusual; odd. *The fantastic shadows were caused by the huge lights.*

**student** *n.* a person who studies or goes to school. *Kia is a student at the new high school.*
- **pupil** a person who goes to school. *Each pupil in the class is learning about the Civil War.*
- **scholar** a very well-educated person. *Do you know that famous scholar?*
- **schoolchild** a boy or girl attending school. *One schoolchild will receive an award for perfect attendance.*

**surprise** *v.* to cause to feel wonder or delight; to astonish. *They wanted to surprise us by singing the song they had written.*
- **amaze** to surprise. *It did amaze me to see so many people at the parade.*
- **astonish** to amaze; surprise. *The magic trick will astonish all of us.*
- **astound** to surprise. *The news of winning the prize did astound all of us.*
- **shock** to surprise; amaze. *It will shock us to hear we had won the contest.*
- **startle** to surprise suddenly. *The loud noise certainly did startle us.*

**taste** *v.* to find or test the flavor of something. *Taste the sauce to see if it needs more garlic.*
- **sample** to take part of. *We tried to sample the various foods to see what we liked best.*
- **savor** to enjoy the taste or smell. *We did savor the spicy flavor of the chili.*
- **try** to test. *Please try the soup to see if it has enough seasoning.*

**tear** *v.* to pull apart or into pieces. *Be careful not to tear the letter as you open the envelope.*
- **fray** to become worn. *This cloth might fray along the edges.*
- **rip** to tear apart. *I hurried to rip open the package to see what was inside.*
- **shred** to tear or cut into pieces. *We shred the paper and make decorations out of it.*

**term** *n.* a period of time. *The winter school term seems long because there aren't many holidays.*
- **interval** space in time. *We were busy during the interval between noon and three o'clock.*
- **period** a portion of time. *Several battles were fought during the period of British rule.*
- **time** a span for a certain activity. *The time was spent working on our science projects.*

**thankless** *adj.* not showing appreciation; ungrateful. *Be sure to write Uncle Jeff a thank-you note so you won't seem thankless for his gift.*
- **unappreciative** not showing appreciation. *The unappreciative boy did not pretend to enjoy his gift.*
- **ungrateful** not thankful. *The ungrateful citizens picketed the statehouse.*

antonym: thankful

**thicken** *v.* to make heavier or thicker. *You can use flour to thicken gravy.*
- **congeal** to become solid by cooling. *The sauce will congeal as it cools.*
- **jell** to thicken; congeal. *The fruit juice will jell if you put it in the refrigerator.*

**thin** *adj.* slender; not thick. *A sheet of paper is thin.*
- **slender** slim; long and thin. *The diet helped him maintain a slender body.*
- **slight** slender; not big. *His slight body made him a quick runner.*
- **slim** thin; slender. *She had a slim figure because she exercised regularly.*

antonym: thick

**thought** *n.* the act or process of thinking. *She spent many hours in thought about the problem.*
- **consideration** thinking about events to make a decision. *We gave careful consideration to the request.*
- **reflection** thinking carefully, thoughtfully. *Our reflection on the game helped us understand why our team lost.*
- **study** reading and thinking to learn. *My study of chemistry involved learning a lot of formulas.*

**thoughtful** *adj.* having consideration for others. *She is thoughtful of her friends and never hurts their feelings.*
- **considerate** thoughtful of others. *A considerate person will often lend a hand to help others.*
- **diplomatic** having skills in dealing with others. *His friends said he was diplomatic when faced with a conflict.*
- **tactful** able to say and do the right thing. *Everyone likes a tactful person for a friend.*

antonym: thoughtless

**thunder** *v.* to make a sound like thunder. *When it began to thunder, we headed for home.*
- **boom** to make a deep sound. *The announcer's voice can boom across the stadium.*
- **drum** to tap again and again. *He likes to drum his fingers loudly.*
- **roar** to make a loud noise. *The lions roar when it is time to eat.*
- **rumble** to make a deep sound; make a continuous sound. *Thunder seemed to rumble in the distance.*

**tiny** *adj.* very small; wee. *An ant is a tiny animal.*
- **little** small; not big. *The little car was a perfect toy for the young child.*
- **small** little. *The small child seemed to be lost.*
- **wee** tiny; very small. *The story was about a wee person who lived in the woods.*

antonym: huge

**tire** *v.* to make weary or exhausted. *Exercising for a long time does tire me.*
- **exhaust** to tire. *The long hike over the hills did exhaust the campers.*
- **fatigue** to make weary or tired. *The hard work will fatigue the road crew.*
- **weary** to become tired. *The long walk will weary all of us.*

**touch** *v.* to feel with the hand or another part of the body. *The builder wanted to touch the cement to see if it was still soft.*
- **feel** to touch. *Mike did feel the wood to see if it needed to be sanded more.*
- **handle** to touch; hold. *She must handle the glass statues very carefully.*
- **stroke** to move the hand gently. *She liked to stroke the pet kitten.*

**tough** *adj.* strong; not easily torn or broken. *The rug is made of very tough materials.*
- **hard** not soft. *The ice on the lake was frozen as hard as a rock.*
- **rugged** uneven; rough. *It was difficult to walk over the rugged countryside.*
- **strong** having power and force. *The strong workers lifted many boxes on and off the trucks every day.*

antonym: weak

**tremble** *v.* to shake or quiver. *I was so nervous that my hands began to tremble.*
- **flutter** to wave quickly. *The flag will flutter in the wind.*
- **quake** to vibrate or shake. *She said that she began to quake every time she heard her name called.*
- **quaver** to tremble or shake. *My voice would quaver when I tried to speak.*
- **shudder** to tremble. *The cold winter wind made us shudder.*

**trick** *n.* something done to deceive. *The phone call was just a trick to get me out of the room while they planned the surprise party.*
- **joke** something funny and clever. *Bob likes to play this joke on his friends.*
- **lark** something that is fun. *Our trip to the house of mirrors was an interesting and exciting lark.*
- **prank** a playful trick. *The phony message was only a prank.*

**true** *adj.* right; accurate; not false. *It is true that ostriches cannot fly.*
- **accurate** without errors. *She kept accurate accounts of the company's business.*
- **actual** real. *The actual events of the day were recorded in the newspaper.*
- **correct** not wrong; free of mistakes. *He had the most correct answers on the test.*
- **factual** consisting of facts. *We keep factual accounts of each experiment.*

antonym: false

**truth** *n.* that which agrees with the facts. *You can trust her because she always tells the truth.*
- **fact** something true. *This fact of the case was presented in court.*
- **reality** true state or existence. *The reality may be that these space creatures do not exist.*

**uncover** *v.* to reveal or expose. *They will uncover the truth during the trial.*
- **expose** to uncover. *We will expose the truth to the television news reporter.*
- **reveal** to make known. *We knew she would not reveal our secret to anyone.*
- **unearth** to find out; discover. *The investigator finally was able to unearth the truth about the accident.*

**unhappy** *adj.* not happy; sad; full of sorrow. *When Maria was unhappy, we tried to cheer her up.*
- **sad** not happy. *Losing the game made the team feel sad.*
- **sorrowful** full of sorrow. *The death of a pet is a sorrowful occasion.*
- **unfortunate** not lucky. *Losing your money for the show was an unfortunate event.*
- **unlucky** not lucky. *With everything that has happened, he is a very unlucky person.*

antonyms: happy, glad

**unlock** *v.* to undo a lock by turning a key. *Mr. Hughes can unlock the door and let us in.*
- **unbolt** to undo the bolts. *He will unbolt the door to let us into the house.*
- **unfasten** to untie; undo. *We tried to unfasten the rope that was tied to the fence.*
- **unlatch** to undo a latch. *The farmer was able to unlatch the door to the shed.*

antonym: lock

**unsafe** *adj.* not safe; dangerous. *Running in a crowded hallway is unsafe.*
- **dangerous** risky; not safe. *The old road through the hills is a dangerous route.*
- **hazardous** dangerous; full of risk. *The hazardous waste was to be buried in a cave.*

**useful** *adj.* of use; helpful. *She gave me some useful advice about studying for the test.*
- **helpful** giving aid; useful. *My assistant is especially helpful when things get busy.*
- **serviceable** useful. *The mixer has been serviceable for many years.*
- **worthy** having worth. *The plan to restore the old buildings is a worthy cause.*

antonym: useless

**view** *n.* opinion; idea. *His view was that we should change our plans.*
- **idea** plan or belief. *The class chose one idea about the scenery for the play.*
- **opinion** what one thinks. *She asked my opinion on the color of dress to buy.*
- **outlook** a view. *He has an interesting outlook on the future of the city government.*

**village** *n.* a number of houses and buildings in an area that is smaller than a town. *Everyone knows everyone else in our village.*
- **hamlet** a small village. *The little hamlet was nestled in the Swiss mountains.*
- **suburb** town or village near a city. *We live in a suburb of Chicago.*
- **township** part of a county. *The township has police and fire departments.*

**wasteful** *adj.* tending to waste; using or spending too much. *Taking more food than you can eat is wasteful.*
- **extravagant** wasteful; spending too much. *Extravagant people often spend more than they need to.*
- **lavish** giving or spending very generously. *The lavish gifts were too fancy to be used by anyone.*

**wise** *adj.* having much knowledge or information. *Scientists and professors are wise.*
- **knowing** well-informed; having much knowledge. *My aunt had a knowing smile on her face when I explained the problem.*
- **profound** showing great knowledge. *Robert says profound things about the future.*
- **sage** wise. *You should listen to her sage advice.*
- **tactful** having tact. *Beth is kind and tactful when she deals with difficult people.*

**wonder** *v.* to be curious to know. *I wonder how the song will end.*
- **disbelieve** to refuse to believe. *Marie seemed to disbelieve the story about how the vase was broken.*
- **doubt** to have difficulty believing. *I doubt if we will ever know the cause of the fire.*
- **question** to doubt. *I still question the motives of the city officials.*

**wring** *v.* to twist and squeeze. *Wring out the wet cloth before you wipe the table.*
- **squeeze** to press hard. *I will squeeze the grapefruit to get all the juice out.*
- **twist** to wind or turn. *He should twist the rag to get out the water.*

**wrinkle** *n.* a small crease or fold. *Rosa ironed the wrinkle out of her skirt.*
- **crease** a wrinkle. *The crease in his forehead showed us he was very worried.*
- **crinkle** a wrinkle or crease. *The crinkle in the wrapping paper spoiled the package.*
- **rumple** a wrinkle. *They pressed every rumple from the tablecloths.*





**wrong** *adj.* not correct; not true. *Your answer was wrong.*
- **false** not correct; not true. *We were given false information about the crime.*
- **inaccurate** not accurate. *Our cost estimates were wrong because we were given inaccurate information.*
- **incorrect** not correct; wrong. *The incorrect directions caused us to get lost.*

antonym: right

**young** *adj.* not old or fully grown. *A fawn is a young deer.*
- **juvenile** young; youthful. *I enjoy reading juvenile books.*
- **youngish** rather young. *The youngish group was the first to the top of the mountain.*
- **youthful** young; looking or acting young. *The group had very youthful spirits.*

# Index


## A

**abstract vowels,** 58, 82. *See also* **diphthongs**
**accent mark,** 71
**adjective suffixes,** 94, 229. *See also* **suffixes**
**adjectives,** 41, 51, 98, 150, 151, 176, 202, 203, 217
**adverbs,** 150, 151, 240, 241
**advertisement, writing,** 213, 231
**affixes.** *See* **prefixes; suffixes**
**alphabetical order,** 15, 27, 53, 67, 91, 229
**anagrams,** 144, 176, 182
**analogies,** 16, 22, 28, 34, 40, 60, 65, 78, 104, 130, 142, 186, 206, 224
**antonyms,** 62, 91, 97, 104, 122–123, 138, 147, 185, 188, 198, 218
**apostrophes**
  **proper use of,** 51, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241
  **showing possession,** 50, 210, 234, 237
**art and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**assessment**
  **review, unit,** 45–47, 83–85, 121–123, 159–161, 197–199, 235–237
  **standardized test practice,** 48–49, 86–87, 124–125, 162–163, 200–201, 238–239
  **words for,** 44, 82, 120, 158, 196, 234

## B

**base words,** 21, 24, 36, 68, 80, 94, 100, 106, 118, 132, 135, 141, 146–151, 158, 160, 172–177, 178–183, 184–189, 196, 197, 205, 208, 216, 217, 221, 234, 236. *See also* **word roots/origins**
**book review, writing,** 99
**business letter, writing,** 187, 203

## C

**calendar words,** 190–195, 196, 199
**capitalization**
  **calendar words,** 190, 191, 193, 196
  **proper nouns,** 51, 88, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241
  **at sentence beginning,** 51, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241
**categorizing words,** 33, 78, 147, 153, 168, 230
**changing f to v (when making plurals),** 21, 167, 170, 211
**changing y to i (when adding suffixes),** 30, 62, 146, 150, 158, 214
**characterization.** *See* **writing skills**
**climax.** *See* **writing skills**
**closed compounds,** 222, 234
**closed syllables,** 135
**comma, use,** 51, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241
**common noun,** 88, 89
**comparative adjectives/adverbs,** 150
**comparisons**
  **making,** 186
**complex consonants**
  **qu/squ,** 108–113, 120, 122
  **soft g,** 114–119, 120, 123
**compound words,** 182, 195, 222–227, 234, 236
**comprehension.** *See* **reading skills**
**conjunctions,** 103
**consonant changes**
  **changing f to v,** 21, 167, 170, 211
**consonants.** *See also* **letters and sounds**
  **complex consonants** (*see* **complex consonants**)
  **digraphs,** 36, 52
  **double consonants,** 15, 18, 53, 80, 112, 128–133, 144, 156, 158, 159 (*see also* **suffixes, consonant doubling**)
  **patterns with**
    **consonant-consonant-vowel-consonant (CCVC) words,** 19
    **consonant-consonant-vowel-consonant-consonant (CCVCC) words,** 19
    **o-consonant digraph-e,** 52, 82, 85
    **vowel-consonant-e (VCe) words,** 20–25, 45, 199
    **a-consonant-e,** 20, 24, 25
    **e-consonant-e,** 25
    **i-consonant-e,** 20, 24, 25, 38, 41, 43, 44, 47
    **o-consonant-e,** 20, 25
    **u-consonant-e,** 20, 25

**consonants,** (cont.)
**silent consonants,** 42, 102–107, 120, 122, 135, 138, 176, 182, 188, 189, 194, 195, 214
**sounding**
**/b/,** 106
**/ch/,** 36
**/f/,** 42
**/j/,** 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 123
**/k/,** 106, 195
**/kw/,** 108, 111, 113, 120
**/sh/,** 30, 77, 112, 204–209, 229, 233, 234, 235
**/zh/,** 204–209, 234, 235
**words ending in**
**en,** 128–133, 158, 159
**le,** 128–133, 134–139, 158, 159
**context clues,** 22, 28, 34, 40, 54, 60, 66, 72, 78, 98, 110, 116, 130, 136, 142, 148, 154, 168, 174, 180, 186, 192, 206, 212, 218, 224, 230

D

**descriptive essay, writing,** 61, 89
**descriptive words/language,** 17, 29, 89, 181, 219, 231
**diary entry, writing,** 29, 207
**dictionary skills,** 15, 21, 27, 29, 33, 39, 51, 53, 59, 65, 71, 72, 77, 79, 89, 91, 93, 103, 109, 110, 115, 127, 129, 147, 153, 156, 165, 167, 179, 191, 203, 205, 211, 223, 226, 229, 241
**accent mark,** 71
**alphabetical order,** 15, 27, 53, 91, 229
**antonyms,** 138
**base words,** 147
**entry word,** 21
**guide words,** 115, 141, 173
**homophones,** 33, 157
**multiple-meaning words,** 77
**parts of speech,** 53, 65, 77, 223
**dictionary skills,** (cont.)
**plurals,** 167, 171
**possessives,** 211
**respellings,** 39, 53, 153, 179, 195
**syllables,** 59, 71, 135
**word history,** 191
**digraphs**
**consonant digraphs,** 36, 52
**diphthongs,** 64–69, 84
**drafting,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 51, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 89, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 127, 131, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 193, 203, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231, 241
**dropping final e (when adding suffixes),** 21, 94, 118, 146, 150, 158, 178, 182, 183, 196, 220

E

**editing,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 51, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 89, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 127, 131, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 193, 203, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231, 241
**editing checklist,** 51, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241
**electronic resources/dictionary,** 35, 41, 55, 67, 73, 241. *See also* **spell-check function; spelling verification**
**e-mail message**
**Netiquette,** 111, 127
**writing,** 111, 127
**endings.** *See* **suffixes**
**Extend & Transfer,** 18–19, 24–25, 30–31, 36–37, 42–43, 56–57, 62–63, 68–69, 74–75, 80–81, 94–95, 100–101, 106–107, 112–113, 118–119, 132–133, 138–139, 144–145, 150–151, 156–157, 170–171, 176–177, 182–183, 188–189, 194–195, 208–209, 214–215, 220–221, 226–227, 232–233

F

**facts and opinions,** 92
**figurative language,** 36
**friendly letter, writing,** 23, 137

G

**genre.** *See* **informative/explanatory writing; narrative writing; opinion writing**
**German roots,** 194
**grammar, usage, and mechanics**
**adjectives,** 42, 51, 98, 150, 151, 176, 202, 203, 217
**adverbs,** 150, 151, 240, 241
**conjunctions,** 103
**nouns,** 42, 50, 88, 89, 132, 166, 176, 178, 179, 196, 202, 210, 217, 234
**parts of speech,** 42, 53, 65, 77, 223
**pronouns,** 164, 165, 202
**verbs** (*see* **verbs**)

H

**handwriting models,** 244–245
**high frequency words,** 246–248
**homographs,** 74, 195
**homophones,** 33, 39, 42, 56, 59, 65, 74, 80, 91, 94, 144, 152–157, 158, 161, 214
**how-to paragraph, writing,** 193

I

**idioms,** 36, 60, 80, 98, 130, 168
**inferences, making.** *See* **reading skills**
**informative/explanatory writing**
**book review,** 99
**business letter,** 187, 203
**description,** 143, 181
**descriptive essay,** 61
**e-mail message,** 111, 127
**how-to paragraph,** 193

**informative/explanatory writing,** (cont.)
**instructions,** 149
**letter of complaint,** 105
**note,** 219
**thank-you note,** 93
**travel report,** 79
**initial sounds.** *See* **sounds**
**instructions, writing,** 149

## L

**language**
**calendar words,** 190–195, 196, 198
**words about our world,** 228–233, 234, 237
**language arts and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**Latin roots,** 74, 132, 182, 205, 208
**Latin suffixes,** 205
**letters**
**anagrams,** 144, 176, 182
**substituting,** 97, 115, 129, 144, 167, 188, 226, 236
**unscrambling,** 191
**letters and sounds.** *See also* **patterns**
**a,** 14–19, 26–31, 44, 46, 68, 96, 99, 101, 226, 229
**b,** 106, 107
**c,** 195
**e,** 14–19, 32–37, 44, 46, 68, 96, 99, 100, 101, 217, 220, 226 (*see also* **suffixes, dropping final e in endings**)
**f,** 21, 167, 170, 211
**g,** 114–119, 120, 123
**h,** 176
**i,** 14–19, 30, 38–43, 44, 47, 62, 68, 96, 99, 101, 146, 150, 158, 214
**k,** 102, 106, 120
**l,** 214
**m,** 92
**o,** 14–19, 52–57, 68, 82, 83, 85
**letters and sounds,** (cont.)
**s,** 102, 106, 120, 215 (*see also* **suffixes, -s, -es**)
**t,** 106
**u,** 14–19, 68, 96, 99, 100, 101
**v,** 21, 167, 170, 211
**w,** 176
**y,** 30, 38, 41, 43, 44, 47, 62, 68, 146, 150, 158, 214, 217, 220
**letters, writing,** 23, 105, 117, 137, 187, 203, 209, 219, 225. *See also* **informative/explanatory writing, narrative writing, opinion writing**
**linking verbs,** 126, 127
**list, writing,** 175

## M

**main idea,** 241
**making inferences.** *See* **reading skills**
**math and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**meaning mastery,** 24, 42, 80, 100, 138, 156, 182, 188, 194, 214, 232
**mechanics.** *See* **grammar, usage, and mechanics**
**multiple-meaning words,** 77, 109, 118

## N

**narrative writing**
**descriptive essay,** 89
**diary entry,** 29, 207
**friendly letter,** 23, 137
**list,** 175
**poetry,** 55
**postcard,** 155
**realistic story,** 17, 51
**story,** 73, 169
**Netiquette.** *See* **e-mail message**
**newspaper ad,** 35, 67
**notes, writing,** 93, 219
**noun suffixes,** 176. *See also* **suffixes**
**nouns,** 42, 50, 56, 88, 89, 132, 166, 176, 178, 179, 196, 202, 210, 217, 234

## O

**Old English roots,** 106, 205, 214
**open compounds,** 222, 223, 234
**open syllables,** 135
**opinion essay, writing,** 131, 165
**opinion writing**
**advertisement,** 213, 231
**letter,** 117
**letter to the editor,** 225, 241
**newspaper ad,** 35, 67
**opinion essay,** 131, 165
**poster,** 41
**orthographic patterns.** *See* **patterns**
**outlining,** 51, 89, 165, 203, 241

## P

**paragraphs**
**proofreading,** 193
**writing,** 193
**parts of speech,** 42, 53, 65, 77, 223
**past tense,** 21, 24, 42, 72, 100, 112
**patterns**
**orthographic patterns** (*see* **complex consonants; digraphs; diphthongs**)
**pattern power,** 18, 24, 30, 36, 42, 68, 74, 100, 106, 112, 118, 132, 138, 144, 182, 188, 208, 220, 226
**spelling patterns**
**consonants**
**complex consonants** (*see* **complex consonants**)
**double consonants,** 15, 18, 53, 80, 112, 128–133, 144, 156, 158, 159

**patterns,** (cont.)
**patterns with** (*see* **consonants**)
**silent consonants,** 42, 102–107, 120, 122, 135, 138, 176, 182, 188, 189, 194, 195, 214
**more letters than sounds,** 96–101, 120, 121
**sorting by,** 85 (*see also* **sorting words**)
**vowels** (*see also* **vowels**)
**/ô/,** 70–75, 82
**schwa + r,** 140–145, 158, 160
**structural patterns**
**compound words,** 180, 195, 222–227, 234, 236
**plurals** (*see* **plurals**)
**possessives,** 50, 210–215, 234, 235
**prefixes** (*see* **prefixes**)
**suffixes** (*see* **suffixes**)
**personal pronouns,** 164, 165
**phonics skills.** *See also* **dictionary skills; sounds**
**digraphs,** 36, 52
**rhyme,** 18, 24, 30, 34, 36, 37, 45, 55, 56, 91, 92, 100, 109, 118, 122, 129, 132, 138, 142, 144, 195, 236
**syllables** (*see* **syllables**)
**word building,** 59, 121, 122, 132, 144, 159, 167, 188
**word structure,** 27, 39, 56, 59, 97, 129, 167, 191
**plot.** *See* **writing skills**
**plurals**
**irregular,** 56, 166–171, 196, 197, 211
**possessive nouns,** 50, 210, 211, 214, 215
**proper nouns and,** 232
**regular,** 15, 30, 56, 62, 77, 112, 166-171, 211, 214, 223
**poetry**
**completing,** 192
**poetry,** (cont.)
**proofreading,** 55
**writing,** 55
**possessive nouns,** 50, 210–215, 234, 235
**possessive pronouns,** 164, 165
**postcard, writing,** 155
**poster, writing,** 41
**prefixes,** 226
**base word and,** 68, 172–177, 196, 197
**dis-,** 36, 68
**mid-,** 30
**mis-,** 36
**pre-,** 172–177, 196, 197
**re-,** 30, 42, 172–177, 196, 197
**un-,** 62, 112, 172–177, 196, 197
**present perfect tense,** 112
**present tense,** 42, 112
**prewriting,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 51, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 89, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 127, 131, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 193, 203, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231, 241
**problem solving,** 105, 187
**pronouns,** 164, 165, 202
**proofreading**
**advertisements,** 213, 231
**book reviews,** 99
**descriptions,** 143, 181
**descriptive essays,** 61, 89
**diary entries,** 29, 207
**e-mail messages,** 111, 127
**instructions,** 149
**letters,** 23, 105, 117, 137, 187, 203, 219, 225, 241
**lists,** 175
**marks for,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 131, 137, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 187, 193, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231
**newspaper ads,** 35, 67
**persuasive essays,** 131, 165
**poetry,** 55
**proofreading,** (cont.)
**postcards,** 155
**posters,** 41
**realistic stories,** 17, 51
**stories,** 73, 169
**thank-you notes,** 93
**travel report,** 79
**proper nouns,** 51, 88, 89, 127, 165, 203, 232, 241
**publishing,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 51, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 89, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 127, 131, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 193, 203, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231, 241
**punctuation.** *See specific kinds of punctuation*

**quotation marks, use,** 51, 89, 127, 165, 203, 241

**r-controlled vowels.** *See* **vowels**
**reading skills**
**analogies,** 16, 22, 28, 34, 40, 60, 65, 78, 104, 130, 142, 186, 206, 224
**antonyms,** 62, 91, 97, 104, 138, 147, 185, 188, 218
**categorizing words,** 33, 78, 147, 153, 168, 230
**cloze procedure,** 16, 46, 54, 83, 121, 159, 197, 198 (*see also* **context clues**)
**complete the poem,** 192
**context clues,** 22, 28, 34, 40, 54, 60, 66, 72, 78, 98, 110, 116, 130, 136, 142, 148, 154, 168, 174, 180, 186, 192, 206, 212, 218, 224, 230
**fact and opinion,** 92
**forming possessives,** 212, 235
**idioms,** 36, 60, 80, 98, 130, 168
**making inferences,** 16, 34, 40, 54, 66, 104, 110, 136, 180, 218

**reading skills,** (cont.)
**rhyming words,** 18, 24, 30, 34, 36, 37, 45, 55, 56, 91, 92, 100, 109, 118, 122, 129, 132, 138, 142, 144, 195, 236
**sequences,** 174, 193
**standardized test practice,** 48–49, 86–87, 124–125, 162–163, 200–201, 238–239
**synonyms,** 21, 71, 91, 97, 98, 109, 116, 129, 138, 156, 173, 185, 217
**understanding sayings/proverbs,** 60
**realistic story, writing,** 17, 51
**related words,** 46, 80, 132, 170. *See also* **synonyms**
**review, unit,** 45–47, 83–85, 121–123, 159–161, 197–199, 235–237
**revising,** 17, 23, 29, 35, 41, 51, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 89, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 127, 131, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 193, 203, 207, 213, 219, 225, 231, 241
**rhyme.** *See* **phonics skills; rhyme**
**rhythm (in poetry),** 55
**riddles**
**solving,** 16, 54, 180
**Roman roots,** 194
**roots.** *See* **word roots/origins**
**rules**
**spelling** (*see* **patterns**)

S

**science and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**sensory language/details,** 55, 143. *See also* **descriptive words/language**
**sequences,** 174, 193
**setting.** *See* **writing skills**
**silent letters**
**silent consonants,** 42, 102–107, 120, 122, 135, 138, 176, 182, 188, 189, 194, 195, 214
**silent letters,** (cont.)
**silent e,** 21, 23, 39, 146, 158, 178, 196, 220
**social studies and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**sorting words,** 10–11
**by spelling pattern,** 85
**calendar words,** 190, 195
**compound words,** 222, 227
**final -en,** 134, 139
**final le,** 128, 133, 134, 139
**homophones,** 152, 157
**irregular plurals,** 166, 171
**/j/,** 114, 119
**long a words,** 26, 31
**long e words,** 32, 37
**long i words,** 38, 43
**long o words,** 52, 57, 85
**/o͞o/ and /yo͞o/,** 58, 63
**/ôr/, /ô/,** 70, 75
**possessives,** 210, 215
**prefixes,** 172, 177
**qu and squ,** 108, 113
**r-controlled vowels,** 76, 81, 90, 95
**schwa + r,** 140, 145
**/sh/, /zh/,** 204, 209
**short vowel words,** 14, 19, 96, 101
**with silent consonants,** 102, 107
**suffixes,** 146, 151, 161, 178, 183, 184, 189, 216, 221
**by syllables,** 190, 195
**vowel diphthongs,** 64, 69
**vowel-consonant-e words,** 20, 25
**sounds.** *See also* **letters and sounds; patterns**
**consonants** (*see* **consonants**)
**more letters than sounds,** 96–101, 120, 121
**silent letters** (*see* **silent letters**)
**vowel-consonant-e (VCe) words,** 20–25, 38–43, 44, 45
**vowels** (*see* **vowels**)
**spell-check function**
**in e-mail program,** 111, 127
**in word processor,** 51, 61, 89, 165, 181, 213, 219, 231
**spelling across the curriculum**
**art,** 31, 113, 139, 177
**language arts,** 57, 215
**math,** 37, 69, 101, 133, 183, 209
**science,** 19, 75, 107, 151, 171, 221
**social studies,** 25, 81, 95, 157, 189, 233
**technology,** 43, 63, 119, 145, 195, 227
**Spelling Dictionary,** 249–294
**Spelling Journal, using,** 17, 29, 35, 41, 55, 61, 67, 73, 79, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 131, 137, 143, 149, 181, 187, 193, 213, 219, 225
**spelling patterns.** *See* **patterns**
**spelling rules.** *See* **patterns**
**spelling study strategies.** *See* **study strategies**
**spelling verification,** 17, 23, 35, 41, 55, 67, 73, 79, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 118, 131, 137, 143, 149, 155, 169, 175, 181, 187, 193, 203, 207, 225, 241. *See also* **spell-check function**
**standardized test practice,** 48–49, 86–87, 124–125, 162–163, 200–201, 238–239
**stories**
**proofreading,** 17, 51, 169
**writing,** 17, 51, 73, 169
**structural patterns.** *See* **patterns**
**study strategies,** 12–13
**Circle Dot,** 123
**Endings Sort,** 161, 237
**Pattern Sorting,** 85
**Spelling Tic-Tac-Toe,** 47
**Word Swap,** 199
**suffixes,** 226
**-an,** 229
**-ary,** 235

**suffixes,** (cont.)
**base word and,** 21, 68, 80, 146–151, 158, 160, 178–183, 184–189, 196, 198, 205, 208, 216, 217, 221, 236
**changing f to v,** 21, 167, 170, 211
**changing y to i,** 30, 62, 146, 150, 158, 214
**-cian,** 204, 234
**consonant doubling,** 18, 146, 150, 158, 182
**dropping final e in endings,** 21, 94, 118, 146, 150, 158, 178, 182, 183, 196, 220
**-ed,** 18, 112
**-en,** 134–139, 158, 159
**-er,** 30, 36, 118, 146–151, 158, 160, 178–183, 196, 198
**-ese,** 229, 233
**-est,** 118, 146–151, 158, 160
**-ful,** 68, 184–189, 196, 198
**-ian,** 208, 229, 235
**-ing,** 18, 112
**-ion,** 30, 77, 205, 208, 235
**-ish,** 229
**Latin,** 205
**-less,** 68, 184–189, 196, 198
**-ly,** 68, 80, 220, 240
**-ment,** 216–221, 234, 236, 237
**-ness,** 112, 176, 216–221, 234, 236, 237
**-ous,** 141
**part of speech and,** 42
**-s, -es,** 15, 21, 30, 62, 112, 167, 170, 196, 210, 211, 214, 223, 234, 237
**-sion,** 204, 234
**-tion,** 204, 234
**-y,** 62
**superlative adjectives/adverbs,** 150
**syllabication.** *See* **syllables**
**syllables**
**closed syllables,** 135
**identifying,** 59
**syllables,** (cont.)
**open syllables,** 135
**rhythm and,** 55
**stressed,** 71
**using,** 15, 18, 25, 27, 31, 33, 36, 37, 39, 53, 57, 63, 69, 75, 80, 95, 101, 113, 119, 123, 128, 133, 139, 144, 151, 199, 208
**synonyms,** 21, 71, 91, 97, 98, 109, 116, 129, 138, 156, 173, 185, 217

T

**technology and spelling.** *See* **spelling across the curriculum**
**thank-you note, writing,** 93
**thesaurus, using,** 60, 71, 97, 109, 116, 129, 138, 156, 185, 217, 311. *See also* **Writing Thesaurus**
**thinking skills**
**spelling patterns** (*see* **patterns**)
**word sorting** (*see* **sorting words**)
**topic sentence, writing,** 61, 79, 89, 143, 165, 241
**Transfer,** 23, 61, 155, 169, 175, 207, 231
**Assess for Transfer,** 44, 82, 120, 158, 196, 234
**Extend & Transfer,** 18–19, 24–25, 30–31, 36–37, 42–43, 56–57, 62–63, 68–69, 74–75, 80–81, 94–95, 100–101, 106–107, 112–113, 118–119, 132–133, 138–139, 144–145, 150–151, 156–157, 176–177, 182–183, 188–189, 194–195, 208–209, 214–215, 220–221, 226–227, 232–233
**Spelling Journal,** 17, 29, 35, 41, 55, 67, 73, 79, 93, 99, 105, 111, 117, 131, 137, 143, 149, 181, 187, 193, 213, 219, 225
**travel report, writing,** 79

U

**usage.** *See* **grammar, usage, and mechanics**
**use the dictionary.** *See* **dictionary skills**
**use the thesaurus.** *See* **thesaurus, using**

V

**verbs**
**adverbs as modifiers of,** 240, 241
**linking verbs,** 126, 127
**suffix and,** 178, 179, 196
**tenses,** 18 (*see also specific verb tenses*)
**verbs to nouns,** 217
**words that act as nouns or verbs,** 56
**visualizing.** *See* **writing skills**
**vocabulary skills**
**analogies,** 16, 22, 28, 34, 40, 60, 65, 78, 104, 130, 142, 186, 206, 224
**antonyms,** 62, 91, 97, 104, 138, 147, 185, 188, 218
**categorizing words,** 33, 78, 147, 153, 168, 230
**compound words,** 182, 195, 222–227, 234, 236
**context clues,** 22, 28, 34, 40, 54, 60, 66, 72, 78, 98, 110, 116, 130, 136, 142, 148, 154, 168, 174, 180, 186, 192, 206, 212, 218, 224, 230
**figurative language,** 36
**homographs,** 74, 195
**homophones,** 33, 39, 42, 56, 59, 65, 74, 80, 91, 94, 144, 152–157, 158, 161, 214
**meaning mastery,** 24, 42, 80, 100, 138, 156, 182, 188, 194, 214, 232
**multiple-meaning words,** 77, 109, 118
**sequences,** 174, 193

**vocabulary skills,** (cont.)
**synonyms,** 21, 71, 91, 97, 98, 109, 116, 129, 138, 156, 173, 185, 217
**word analysis,** 15
**word building,** 59, 121, 122, 132, 144, 159, 167, 188
**word clues,** 72, 91, 136, 160, 194, 195, 199
**word groups,** 15, 160, 206
**word history,** 106, 132, 182, 191
**word meaning,** 33, 39, 53, 59, 65, 71, 77, 84, 85, 91, 97, 103, 109, 115, 116, 123, 129, 135, 136, 141, 147, 148, 153, 172, 173, 174, 179, 185, 191, 197, 205, 223, 227, 229
**word roots,** 94 (*see also* **word roots/origins**)
**word structure** (*see* **word structure**)
**working with syllables** (*see* **syllables**)
**vowels.** *See also* **letters and sounds**
**abstract vowels,** 58
**/o͞o/ and /yo͞o/,** 58–63, 83
**consonant-vowel patterns** (*see* **consonants, patterns with**)
**diphthongs,** 64–69, 84
**long vowels,** 20–25, 220
**long a,** 20–25, 26–31, 44, 46, 199, 226
**long e,** 20–25, 32–37, 44, 46, 91, 112, 199, 220, 226
**long i,** 20–25, 38–43, 44, 47, 195, 199
**long o,** 20–25, 52–57, 82, 83, 85
**long u,** 20–25
**more vowels than sounds,** 96–101, 120
**/ô/,** 70–75, 82
**plurals and,** 214
**vowels,** (cont.)
**r-controlled vowels,** 199
**/âr/,** 90–95, 120, 121
**/är/,** 90–95, 120, 121
**/îr/,** 76–81, 82, 85
**/ôr/,** 70–75, 82, 84
**/ûr/,** 76–81, 82, 85
**schwa + r,** 140–145, 158, 160
**short vowels,** 14–19, 44, 45
**short a,** 96, 99, 101
**short e,** 96, 99, 100, 101
**short i,** 96, 99, 101
**short u,** 96, 99, 100, 101
**silent e,** 21, 23, 39, 146, 158, 178, 196, 220
**syllabication and,** 53

W

**word analysis,** 15
**word building,** 59, 121, 122, 132, 144, 159, 167, 188
**word categorization.** *See* **categorizing words**
**word clues,** 27, 45, 47, 72, 91, 136, 160, 194, 195, 199
**word families.** *See* **patterns, spelling patterns**
**word groups,** 15, 160, 206. *See also* **categorizing words**
**word histories,** 106, 132, 182, 191
**word hunts**
**art,** 31, 113, 139, 177
**language arts,** 57, 215
**math,** 37, 69, 101, 133, 183, 209
**science,** 19, 75, 107, 151, 171, 221
**social studies,** 25, 81, 95, 157, 189, 233
**technology,** 43, 63, 119, 145, 195, 227
**word meaning.** *See* **meaning mastery; vocabulary skills**
**word processor,** 51, 241. *See also* **spell-check function**
**word roots/origins,** 94, 221
**German,** 194
**word roots/origins,** (cont.)
**Latin,** 74, 132, 182, 205, 208
**Old English,** 106, 205, 214
**Roman,** 194
**word sorts.** *See* **sorting words**
**word structure.** *See also* **patterns, structural patterns; phonics skills**
**base words** (*see* **base words**)
**homographs,** 74, 185
**homophones,** 33, 39, 42, 56, 59, 65, 74, 80, 91, 94, 144, 152–157, 158, 161, 214
**letter substitution,** 97, 115, 129, 144, 167, 188, 226, 236
**letter unscrambling,** 191
**plurals** (*see* **plurals**)
**syllables** (*see* **syllables**)
**word math,** 59, 167
**word study.** *See* **dictionary skills; meaning mastery; patterns; vocabulary skills; word building; word roots/origins**
**word substitution,** 22, 116, 136, 148, 174, 185, 224
**words.** *See also* **base words; word building**
**calendar words,** 190–195, 196, 199
**categorizing,** 33, 78, 147, 153, 168, 230
**compound words,** 182, 195, 222–227, 234, 236
**identical singular and plural forms,** 211
**making comparisons,** 186
**rhyming** (*see* **phonics skills, rhyme**)
**sorting** (*see* **sorting words**)
**words about our world,** 228–233, 234, 237
**words for assessment & transfer,** 44, 82, 120, 158, 196, 234
**words and letters,** 115
**Writer's Workshop.** *See also* **writing skills**
**adjectives,** 202

**Writer's Workshop,** (cont.)
**adverbs,** 240, 241
**common/proper nouns,** 88
**linking verbs,** 126
**possessive nouns,** 50
**pronouns,** 164
**writing process,** 137, 187, 242–243. *See also* **drafting; editing; prewriting; publishing; revising**
**writing skills.** *See also* **Writer's Workshop**
**characterization,** 17, 51, 99
**climax,** 17, 51, 73
**informative/explanatory prompts,** 61, 79, 93, 99, 105, 111, 127, 143, 149, 181, 187, 193, 203, 219 (*see also* **informative/explanatory writing**)
**narrative prompts,** 17, 23, 29, 51, 55, 73, 89, 137, 155, 169, 175, 207 (*see also* **narrative writing**)
**writing skills,** (cont.)
**opinion prompts,** 35, 41, 67, 117, 131, 213, 225, 231 (*see also* **opinion writing**)
**plot, developing,** 51, 73
**proofreading** (*see* **proofreading**)
**setting,** 51
**spell-check function in e-mail program,** 111, 127
**spell-check function in word processor,** 51, 61, 89, 165, 181, 213, 219, 231
**visualizing,** 17
**Writing Thesaurus,** 295–321

# Credits

**Photography:** p. 3 top © Chet Baron/MCA+; p. 3 bottom © PhotoDisc; p. 4 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 5 © iStockphoto.com/kcline; p. 6 © iStockphoto.com/fujean; p. 7 top © istockphoto/narvikk; p. 7 bottom © istockphoto/lovemovement; p. 8 © iStockphoto.com/Melissa Carroll; p. 9 © Jack Hollingsworth/Getty Images, Inc.; p. 10–11 © George C. Anderson; p. 12 top © George C. Anderson Photography; p. 12 bottom © istock.com/shaunl; p. 13 © George C. Anderson Photography; p. 15 © Image Source/Corbis; p. 16 © Chet Baron/MCA+; p. 19 © iStockphoto.cpm/Donna Heatfield; p. 21 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 22 © iStockphoto.com/Peter Marshall; p. 25 © Carl Iwasaki/Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images; p. 27 © Blend Images/Alamy; p. 28 © iStockphoto.com; p. 31 © AP Images; p. 33 © iStockphoto.com/Melissa Carroll; p. 34 © iStockphoto.com/John Pauls; p. 37 © PCN Chrome/Alamy; p. 39 © iStockphoto.com/Luminis; p. 40 © Creatas/Jupiter Images; p. 43 © Jack Hollingsworth/Getty Images, Inc.; p. 45 © iStockphoto.com/Cheryl Paquin; p. 46 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 50 © iStockphoto/Giorgio Fochesato; p. 53 © iStockphoto.com; p. 54 © iStockphoto.com/Francisco Romero; p. 57 © Radius Images/Alamy; p. 59 © Visions of America, LLC/Alamy; p. 60 © Geoff du Feu/Alamy; p. 63 © MBI/Alamy; p. 65 © iStockphoto.com/Kevin Eaves; p. 66 © iStockphoto.com/Lifephoto; p. 69 © Moodboard/Corbis; p. 71 © iStockphoto.com/Atlaspix; p. 72 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 75 © iStockphoto.comm/Francisco Romero; p. 77 © iStockphoto.com/D. Huss; p. 78 © iStockphoto.com/Chepko Danil; p. 81 © Andrew B. Graham/The Bridgeman Art Library/Getty Images; p. 83 © iStockphoto.com/Paul Hill; p. 84 © iStockphoto.com/Paul Yates; p. 88 © iStockphoto.com/Angie Stadler; p. 91 © iStockphoto/digitalskillet; p. 92 © iStockphoto.com/Christine Kublanski; p. 95 © Bettmann/CORBIS; p. 97 © iStockphoto.com/Arvind Balaraman; p. 98 © Jeff Greenberg/Alamy; p. 101 © Picture Partners/Alamy; p. 103 © iStockphoto.com/Eric Gevaert; p. 104 © Ted Foxx/Alamy; p. 107 © iStockphoto.com/Michael Lynch; p. 109 © iStockphoto.com/Zsolt Biczó; p. 110 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 113 © D. Hurst/Alamy; p. 115 © Lucinda Hutson; p. 116 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 119 © iStockphoto.com/blackred; p. 121 © iStockphoto.com/Floortje; p. 122 © iStockphoto.com/Pablo Demetrio Scapinachis; p. 126 © iStockphoto.com/Linda Armstrong; p. 129 © iStockphoto.com/John Prescott; p. 130 © James Forte/Photolibrary; p. 133 © John Mitchell/Alamy; p. 135 © iStockphoto.com/lisafx; p. 136 © iStockphoto.com/Karen Town; p. 139 © Jose Luis Pelaez, Inc./Corbis; p. 141 © iStockphoto.com/Clint Spencer; p. 142 © imagebroker/Alamy; p. 145 © Image Source/Getty Images; p. 147 © iStockphoto.com/Colleen Butler; p. 148 © PhotoDisc; p. 151 © Zaner-Bloser; p. 153 © iStockphoto.com/Joe Cicak; p. 154 © iStockphoto.com/Martil57900; p. 157 © Bettmann/Corbis; p. 159 © First Light/Alamy; p. 160 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 164 © iStockphoto.com/kcline; p. 167 © istockphoto/narvikk; p. 168 © Betty LaRue/Alamy; p. 171 © istockphoto/lovemovement; p. 173 © istockphoto/kate_sept2004; p. 174 © istockphoto/iofoto; p. 177 © Stockbyte/Getty Images; p. 179 © istockphoto/Glenn Frank; p. 180 © Ariel Skelley/Blend Images/Corbis; p. 183 © Stockbyte/Getty Images; p. 185 © istockphoto/asiseeit; p. 186 © istockphoto/jamiestokes; p. 189 © Corbis/Bettman; p. 191 © Ron Sherman/Getty Images; p. 192 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 195 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 197 © iStockphoto.com/fujean; p. 198 © Ariel Skelley/CORBIS; p. 202 © ColorBlind Images; p. 205 © iStockphoto.com; p. 206 © iStockphoto.com/Kyle McMahon; p. 209 © iStockphoto.com/Lisa F. Young; p. 211 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 212 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 215 © SuperStock; p. 217 © Jupiter Images p. 218 © Image Source/Getty Images; p. 221 © PhotoAlto/Sigrid Olsson/Getty Images; p. 223 © iStockphoto.com/Andrew Rich; p. 224 © Corbis/PhotoLibrary; p. 227 © Sandy Jones/Getty Images; p. 229 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 230 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 233 © iStockphoto.com/Rich Legg; p. 235 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 236 © istockphoto/Jasna Hrovatin; p. 240 © Peter Arnold, Inc./Alamy; p. 250 © iStockphoto.com/Geoffrey Holman; p. 252 © Ariel Skelley/Blend Images/Corbis; p. 54 © iStockphoto.com/Floortje; p. 256 © iStockphoto.com/D. Huss; p. 258 © Lucinda Hutson; p. 260 © William Manning/Alamy; p. 263 © iStockphoto.com/kcline; p. 264 © iStockphoto.com/Murat Koc; p. 266 © Rolf Nussbaumer/Alamy; p. 269 © iStockphoto.com/Pablo Demetrio Scapinachis; p. 271 © iStockphoto.com/Eric Gevaert; p. 272 © iStockphoto.com/Wellford Tiller; p. 274 © Image Source/Corbis; p. 276 © iStockphoto.com/Chris At; p. 277 © istockphoto/lovemovement; p. 279 © D. Hurst/Alamy; p. 280 © iStockphoto.com/Daniel Grill; p. 281 © imagel00/Alamy; p. 282 © Image Source/Corbis; p. 285 © Creatas/Jupiter Images; p. 286 © iStockphoto.com/Andrew Dean; p. 287 © iStockphoto.com/Justin Horrocks; p. 288 © iStockphoto.com/Arvind Balaraman; p. 290 © Jupiter Images/Getty Images; p. 291 © Geoff du Feu/Alamy; p. 293 © Creatas/Jupiter Images; p. 294 © iStockphoto.com/monkeybusinessimages.

**Illustrations:** Alessia Girasole: 24, 30, 36, 42, 56, 62, 68, 74, 80, 94, 100, 106, 112, 118, 132, 138, 144, 150, 156, 170, 176, 182, 188, 194, 208, 214, 220, 226, 232